

H. O. Mitchell

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

Upper-Intermediate - B2

for Cambridge,
Michigan
and other exams

Teacher's Book


mm publications

Introduction

Grammar Practice & Vocabulary is aimed at **upper-intermediate / B2** level students.

As well as teaching grammar points, the aim of the book is to familiarise students with the format of the Revised Use of English Paper of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination as well as with the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan ECCE**.

This book consists of **24 units**, **6 revision units** and **2 practice tests**.

Each unit is made up of:

- **Grammar**
a thorough review of grammatical structures with clear explanations and examples illustrating every structure
- **Grammar exercises**
a variety of exercises, some of which are modelled on either Paper 3 of the **Cambridge FCE** Examination or the grammar section of the **Michigan ECCE**, providing general practice on the grammatical structures taught in the unit
- **Transformation**
rewording sentences using key words; this exercise tests grammar
- **Phrasal Verbs**
clear explanations of a set of phrasal verbs together with an exercise practising them
- **Prepositions and Prepositional phrases**
an exercise practising the use of prepositions with verbs, nouns and adjectives as well as their use in idioms
- **Derivatives**
an exercise based on word formation to help students enrich their vocabulary
- **Words easily confused**
clear explanations of words that students commonly confuse and an exercise practising them.
- **Revision units and Practice FCE and ECCE Tests**

The **Practice Tests** are modelled on the **Cambridge FCE Use of English Paper** and on the Grammar and Vocabulary sections of the **University of Michigan Examination for the ECCE**.

The book includes a **dictionary** and **appendices** with:

- **Prepositions**
- **Prepositional Phrases**
- **Derivatives**

There is a **Teacher's Book** available with the answers overprinted on the Student's Book, Revision Tests, Final FCE Test, Final ECCE Test and Key to tests.

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

H.Q. Mitchell

Published by: **MM Publications**

www.mmpi.net www.mmpi.co.uk

info@mmpi.net

Offices

Great Britain - Greece - Poland - France - Cyprus - USA - Turkey

Associated companies and representatives throughout the world.

Copyright © 2008 MM Publications

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without permission in writing from the publishers.

The publishers have tried to contact all copyright holders, but in cases where they may have failed, they will be pleased to make the necessary arrangements at the first opportunity.

Produced in the EU

ISBN 10: 960-443-260-8

ISBN 13: 978-960-443-260-5

Teacher's Book ISBN 10: 960-443-261-3

ISBN 13: 978-960-443-261-5

N0708011021-2587/2588

Contents

Unit 1	Present Time	4
Unit 2	Past Time	8
Unit 3	Present Perfect	12
Unit 4	Future Time	17
	Revision 1	21
Unit 5	Infinitive	24
Unit 6	-ing form	29
Unit 7	Modal Verbs I	34
Unit 8	Modal Verbs II	39
	Revision 2	44
Unit 9	Articles	47
Unit 10	Nouns	52
Unit 11	Adjectives-Adverbs-Comparisons	57
Unit 12	Determiners	64
	Revision 3	69
Unit 13	Pronouns-Possessives	72
Unit 14	Passive Voice	77
Unit 15	Causative Form	82
Unit 16	Conditionals	86
	Revision 4	91
Unit 17	Unreal Past-Would rather-Had better	94
Unit 18	Reported Speech	100
Unit 19	Question Forms	106
Unit 20	Clauses I	112
Unit 21	Clauses II	118
	Revision 5	124
Unit 22	Linking Words	127
Unit 23	Participles	132
Unit 24	Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures-Inversion	136
	Revision 6	141
Final FCE Practice Test		144
Final ECCE Practice Test		148
Dictionary		153
Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions		161
Prepositional Phrases		163
Derivatives		165
Irregular Verbs		168
Teacher's Book Contents		
Revision Test 1		170
Revision Test 2		173
Revision Test 3		176
Revision Test 4		179
Revision Test 5		182
Revision Test 6		185
Final FCE Test		188
Final ECCE Test		192
Key to Tests		197

01 Present Time

The Present Simple is used:

- for habitual or repeated actions and situations.
I watch this show once a week.
- for general truths and natural phenomena.
The earth goes round the sun.
Most rivers flow into the sea.
- for permanent situations in the present.
James lives in Zurich.
- for future actions related to timetables and programmes.
The train leaves at six o'clock.
- for headlines, sports commentaries, story-telling, reviews of films and books, directions and instructions.
Three women rob bank.
Martin takes the ball and scores.
In this episode, Bob marries Julia.
You turn left at this junction and you'll find it.
- in exclamatory sentences with "Here...!" / "There...!"
Here comes the bride! There he goes again!

Time Expressions

often, usually, always, never, sometimes, seldom, rarely, hardly ever, every day/week, etc.

The Present Progressive is used:

- for actions or events happening at or around the time of speaking.
Look! That boy is climbing up a tree.
- for temporary states in the present.
David is doing his military service.
I'm studying French this term.
- for situations which are changing or developing around the present.
The problem of pollution is getting more and more serious.
- for planned future actions related to personal arrangements.
I'm travelling to London tomorrow.
- with adverbs of frequency (*constantly, always, etc.*), for emphasis or to express annoying habits.
Susan is very kind; she is always helping the poor.
He is always leaving his clothes on the floor!

Time Expressions

now, at present, at the moment, nowadays, this month, etc.

Stative Verbs

They express a state - not an action - and are not used in the Progressive Tenses:

- verbs of the senses:
feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.
- verbs of emotions and preferences:
like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want, wish, need, prefer, admire, etc.
- verbs of perception, belief, knowledge, ownership:
think, believe, know, understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), etc.
- other verbs which describe permanent states:
be, cost, weigh, seem, appear, consist (of), etc.

note

Some stative verbs can be used in the progressive forms when they express actions rather than states but with a difference in meaning.

State

They have a wonderful house.
I see Mary coming towards us.
I think she is clever.
Do I smell cigarette smoke?
This chewing-gum tastes like strawberry.
He is very selfish. (=that is his character.)

Action

I'm having a bath now.
I'm seeing the doctor tomorrow at 11:00.
I'm thinking of buying a new car.
Why are you smelling the milk? Do you think it's gone off?
She is tasting the soup to see if it needs any more salt.
Why is he being selfish? (=why is he behaving so selfishly?)

Listen, look and watch, though verbs of the senses, can also be used in the progressive tenses because they express voluntary actions.

Jane is listening to music.

Grammar Practice

A Read what the following people have to say about learning English in Britain. Complete with the Present Progressive or the Present Simple of the verbs in brackets.

As part of my job, I travel (travel) abroad a lot, so I need (need) to improve my English. For this reason, I am attending (attend) a course in Business English at a Language Institute in London. The course lasts (last) three weeks.



I come (come) from Italy but I am studying (study) in England at the moment. I am staying (stay) with a British family. In this way, my English improves/is improving (improve) faster because I don't/am not just use/using (not use) it in the classroom but in my everyday life as well.

I visit (visit) England every two or three years, so I speak (speak) some English but not much. At present I am doing (do) a course at a Language School in London and I am learning (learn) lots of new stuff! Apart from that, in the afternoons I go (go) out with my classmates and we try/ are trying (try) to practise our English as much as possible.



B Circle the correct answers.

- In this story, a girl finds / is finding a time machine and travels / is travelling through time.
- Don't bother me now. I write / am writing an important letter.
- I am thinking / think about grandmother. We hardly ever visit / are visiting her. Let's visit her tomorrow.
- The minibus, which is taking / takes people to the other side of the island, leaves / is leaving at 11:00 a.m. and is returning / returns at 6:00 p.m..
- I sleep / am sleeping at my mother's house this week because I am having / have my house painted.
- "When are you leaving / do you leave for Rome?"
"Tomorrow at 8:00 a.m.."
- I think / am thinking you should buy him a tie. He is liking / likes to dress formally.
- Flowers bloom / are blooming in spring.
- You are turning / turn left at the traffic lights and go / are going up Oxford Street.
- Here comes / is coming Kelly. Let's tell her the news.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. John never stops criticising my friends.

always John is always criticising my friends.

2. We've arranged to meet at 8:00 p.m. tomorrow.

are We are meeting at 8:00 p.m. tomorrow.

3. What time is your plane scheduled to arrive at Heathrow?

land What time does your plane land at Heathrow?

4. I have arranged to have dinner with Jerry tonight.

am I am having dinner with Jerry tonight.

5. The older he gets, the more eccentric he becomes.

is As time goes by, he is getting/becoming more and more eccentric.

6. They don't like spicy food, so they avoid eating it.

never They never eat spicy food as they don't like it.

7. Jane has found a job at a supermarket for the summer.

is Jane is working at a supermarket this summer.

8. How much is that green jacket, please?

cost How much does that green jacket cost, please?

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

ask for:	request sth
ask out:	invite sb to go out with you
blow up:	explode
break down:	(1) stop working (for a piece of machinery) (2) lose control of your feelings or emotions
break in:	enter a building illegally or by force (intransitive)
break into:	enter a building illegally or by force (transitive)
break up:	(1) divide into smaller parts (2) give an end to a meeting, relationship, gathering, etc.

It was my birthday so I asked out my best friend to celebrate it with me. When we had finished having dinner, I asked for the bill.

As I was looking out of the window, I saw three masked men trying to break into the bank across the street. Before I could react, there was an explosion. The robbers had blown up a car that was parked near the bank to distract people's attention, so that they could break in without being noticed.

Just then, the robbers ran out of the bank and got into a white Fiat. But they were unlucky. Five hundred metres down the street their car broke down and they were caught.

After the incident, the police broke up the crowd of people that had gathered and life returned to normal again.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

at the age of:	a person's age at the time of an event
at the beginning (of):	at the start of sth
at breakfast/lunch/dinner:	the time of the meal during which sth happens
at the end (of):	at the last part of sth
at first:	initially
at first sight:	when first seen
at ... km per hour:	the speed at which sth moves

- Tax forms must be handed in at the beginning of March. After the 10th, you will have to pay a fine.
- They got married within six months of their first meeting; it was love at first sight.
- At the age of 35, Mark decided to study engineering.
- Tom had an accident because he was speeding. He was going at 140 km per hour.
- At the end of the game, we couldn't decide who the winner was.
- At first, I thought she was joking but then I realised that she was serious.
- We're having a small surprise party at lunch today, so make sure you're back at the office by 12:30 p.m..

C Complete using the correct form of the verbs given.

rent (v):	regularly pay money to the owner of sth in order to have and use it for a long period of time
hire (v):	(1) pay money to the owner of sth in order to use it for a period of time (2) employ sb to do a particular job for you
let (v):	allow the use of your property in exchange for money
leave (v):	forget or deliberately not take sb or sth with you (used when the place is mentioned)
forget (v):	fail to remember or bring sth with you
borrow (v):	take sth from sb with their permission, intending to return it in the future
lend (v):	allow sb to use sth that you own for a period of time

- My parents never let their country house because they go there every weekend.
- When she moved to the city, she rented a flat.
- The school hired a teacher to help the slow learners.
- We couldn't get into the fashion show since we had left the invitations at home.
- I couldn't pay for the shoes I wanted to buy. I had forgotten to take my credit card.
- If you borrow something from a friend, you should take good care of it.
- Steve never lends his CDs to anybody.

The Past Simple is used to describe:

- completed actions that took place at a definite time in the past. The time is either mentioned or implied.
Mary visited the British Museum when she was in London.
Peter won first prize in the art competition.
- permanent situations in the past.
John lived in Ireland for 15 years. (He doesn't live there any more.)
- completed actions that took place one after the other in the past (in story-telling or narratives).
Sue woke up, washed her face and had breakfast.
- past habits or repeated actions in the past; adverbs of frequency (*always, often, seldom, never, etc.*) may also be used.
When Paul was younger, he often went fishing with his father.

Time Expressions

yesterday, then, ago, last month/night/week, when, etc.

The Past Progressive is used to describe:

- an action that was in progress at a definite time in the past.
This time last Friday, I was flying to London.
- actions happening at the same time in the past.
While Helen was watching TV, Nick was studying.
- a lengthy action that was in progress when a shorter or sudden one interrupted it. The longer action is in the Past Progressive and the shorter one is in the Past Simple (usually introduced by *when*).
She was having dinner when the lights went out.
- background scenes to a story.
It was early in the evening and it was beginning to get dark. She was having a cup of tea....
- temporary past states or actions.
He was writing a play in those days.
- repeated past actions or annoying past habits (with *always, continually, etc.*).
My brother was always getting into trouble in the past.

Time Expressions

while, as, etc.

note

- **used to + infinitive** expresses permanent states, past habits or repeated actions in the past.
My grandfather used to be a librarian.
He used to smoke heavily when he was younger.
- **would + infinitive** expresses past habits or describes someone's typical behaviour in the past.
Every evening he would do his homework, watch TV and go to bed quite early.

The Past Perfect Simple is used:

- for an action which was completed before another one in the past. The action which happened first is in the Past Perfect Simple while the action which followed is in the Past Simple (in time clauses introduced by *before, after, when, by the time*). However, when we describe the actions in the order that they happened, we often use the Past Simple.
By the time we arrived, the film had started.
They (had) hung up before I answered the phone.
- for a past action that was completed before a definite time in the past.
Angela had finished cooking by 11:30 a.m..
- with adjectives in the superlative degree and expressions such as: *the first/second..., the only..., etc.*
That was the first time I had been to Paris.
It was the worst time I had ever had.

Time Expressions

by + a certain time, by the time, after, before, when, etc.

The Past Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action that had been in progress up to a moment in the past or before another past event.
By 1987, he had been working in New York for 5 years.
He had been teaching for 35 years when he retired.
- for an action whose duration caused visible results later on in the past.
When they came back from the beach, their skin was red. They had been lying in the sun for 5 hours!

Time Expressions

by, for, since, after, before, how long, etc.

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

1. As a teenager, I **used** / **would** to do things that my parents **weren't approving** / **didn't approve** of. They **were always complaining** / **had always been complaining** about my actions. When they **lectured** / **had lectured** me, I **had covered** / **would cover** my ears and ignore them. Now, I'm experiencing the same thing with my own children!
2. Today I **had had** / **had** an awful day. I **arrived** / **was arriving** at the office, **sat** / **was sitting** down at my desk and suddenly **had discovered** / **discovered** that I **had lost** / **lost** a document on my computer because of a virus. I **worked** / **had been working** on it for the past two days. As if that **wasn't** / **wasn't being** enough, a colleague **would get** / **was getting** on my nerves. While I **had been trying** / **was trying** to remain calm, she **had laughed** / **was laughing** at me.



B Rephrase the following sentences using the words in brackets.

1. I put on ten kilos and then I decided to go on a diet. (**by the time**)
By the time I decided to go on a diet, I had put on ten kilos. or I had put on ten kilos by the time I decided to go on a diet.
2. First, they washed the car and then they waxed it. (**after**)
After they (had) washed the car, they waxed it. or They waxed the car after they (had) washed it.
3. Lisa made a sandwich and then sat on the sofa to watch TV. (**before**)
Before Lisa sat on the sofa to watch TV, she (had) made a sandwich. or Lisa (had) made a sandwich before she sat on the sofa to watch TV.
4. We packed our suitcases and then left for the airport. (**as soon as**)
As soon as we (had) packed our suitcases, we left for the airport. or We left for the airport as soon as we (had) packed our suitcases.
5. Judy was walking down the street when she saw an accident. (**as**)
As Judy was walking down the street, she saw an accident. or Judy saw an accident as she was walking down the street.

C Choose the correct answers.

- When the children _____ home, it was obvious that they had been playing in mud.
a. were arriving **(b) arrived** c. arrive
- Michael _____ in the queue to buy a ticket for the train when he heard a strange voice.
a. waited **(b) was waiting** c. had waited
- In my youth, I _____ the world and often slept under the stars.
(a) travelled b. was travelling c. travel
- The thieves _____ houses for two years before they were finally caught.
(a) had been breaking into b. are breaking into c. break into
- I _____ my studies by 1990.
a. complete b. was completing **(c) had completed**

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- When he was younger, he went to the cinema every week.
used When he was younger, he _____ **used to go to** _____ the cinema every week.
- I hadn't tasted Chinese food before.
first It was the _____ **first time I had tasted** _____ Chinese food.
- While we were in London, it never stopped raining.
continuously It **was raining continuously/rained continuously** while we were in London.
- I worked at a restaurant in those days.
was In those days, I _____ **was working** _____ at a restaurant.
- After walking for a mile, they realised that someone was missing.
had They _____ **had walked/had been walking** _____ for a mile when they realised that someone was missing.
- That was the only science-fiction book he had read.
never He _____ **had never read** _____ a science-fiction book before.
- When Mark was a student, he was in the habit of forgetting his books.
always Mark _____ **was always forgetting** _____ his books when he was a student.
- Jake made a speech and then we left the ceremony.
until We didn't leave the ceremony _____ **until Jake (had) made** _____ a speech.



Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

at last:	finally
at least:	no less than; the minimum that could be done
at night:	late in the evening
at noon:	in the middle of the day
at peace/war:	in a state of harmony/conflict
at present:	now
at the same time:	simultaneously

- The unemployment rate is high at present.
- You could at least clean up your room. You don't do anything to help me with the housework.
- He started working on this report at 8:00 a.m. and stopped at noon for lunch.
- You shouldn't eat and talk at the same time.
- At last, the bus arrived. We had been waiting for an hour.
- The baby woke up at night and started crying. It was afraid of the dark.
- In order to be happy, you should always be at peace with yourself.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

A GARLIC A DAY KEEPS THE DOCTOR AWAY

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have

traditionally used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic was also thought of as a valuable medicine by many ancient civilisations.

Today, professionals in the field of nutrition have come up with new information which is indeed quite surprising. Apparently, not only is garlic good for you but it also helps you overcome various illnesses.

The main disadvantage of eating garlic is of course bad breath. Cooking it, reduces the strong smell and eating parsley, which is a natural deodoriser, also helps minimise the smell. So, it's time we took the benefits of garlic seriously.

Why not add it to some of your favourite dishes!

TRADITION

VALUE

PROFESSION

INFORM, SURPRISE

ILL

ADVANTAGE, BREATHE

NATURE

SERIOUS

FAVOUR

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

job (n):	the work sb does in order to earn money; employment
work (n):	(1) particular tasks sb has to do in their job (2) the place where sb does their job
duty (n):	the work that sb is responsible for getting done
task (n):	activity sb has to do, usually as part of a larger project

see (v):	notice, observe, take a look at sb/sth
watch (v):	look at sb/sth for a period of time and observe what is happening
look (at) (v):	turn your eyes to a particular direction, see what is there or what sb/sth is like

- Don't interrupt me now. I've got a lot of work to do.
- Julie found a good job close to where she lives.
- One of my duties as a nurse is to be on time because lives depend on it.
- Our teacher gave us a few tasks to do during the summer holidays.
- I happened to look out of my window when my cousin was walking past.
- Did you see Mary's costume at the carnival? It was wonderful!
- I watched the football match before I went to bed.

The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions which started in the past and are still happening.
I have known him for three years. (I still know him.)
- for past actions whose results are connected to the present.
The dog has spilt the milk. (The floor is dirty.)
- to announce news, changes or events that affect the present.
He has lost almost all his hair.
- for past actions whose time is not stated, or for recently completed actions.
He has travelled to India.
I've just finished my homework.
- with **today, this morning/week** etc., if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.
He has written two letters this morning. (It is still morning.)
- with adjectives in the superlative degree or expressions like: *the only/first/second...*, etc.
This is the most expensive suit I've ever bought.
This is the third time Jack has visited the USA.

Time Expressions

since, for, just, yet, already, how long, ever, never, etc.

The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- to emphasise the duration of an action which started in the past and is still happening. The action may or may not be completed.
They have been studying French for five years.
- for actions that have been going on up to the recent past with obvious results in the present.
"Why is the road so slippery?"
"It has been raining."
- for actions which are temporary rather than permanent.
He has been working overtime this week as there is a lot of work to do at the office.
- to show anger, annoyance, irritation or to demand an explanation for a very recent action.
Who has been wearing my coat?
Have you been drinking again?

Time Expressions

how long, for, since, all day/morning, etc.

Differences**The Present Perfect Simple is used:**

- for permanent situations.
She has lived in London all her life.
- to emphasise the result of an action.
I've called him three times this morning.
- for actions that are already finished.
Look at the car. Sam has washed it.

The Present Perfect Simple is used:

- for past events which have a connection to the present.
The exact time is not mentioned.
I've found a new job.
- for events that began in the past but are still happening in the present.
I have lived in Athens for ten years. (I still live in Athens.)
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking.
Helen has called me twice this morning. (the morning is not over yet.)

The Present Perfect Progressive is used:

- for temporary situations.
He has been staying with friends for two months, but now he wants to get his own place.
- to emphasise the duration of an action.
I've been calling him since ten o'clock.
- for actions that may or may not be finished.
Sam has been washing the car for an hour.

The Past Simple is used:

- for completed past events which are not connected to the present. **The exact time is mentioned.**
I found a new job three months ago.
- for events that took place for a certain period of time in the past but are over at the time of speaking.
Susan lived in Manchester for three years but now she lives in Liverpool.
- with **today, this morning/week**, etc. if these periods of time are finished.
Helen called me twice this morning. (the morning is over.)

note

They've been to Italy. (they are back now.)

They've gone to Italy. (they are still there.)

feel, learn, live, sleep, study, teach, wait, work, etc. can be used in the Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Progressive with no difference in meaning.

He has worked in that factory for three years.

He has been working in that factory for three years.

Time Expressions

A. for - since

for is used when we want to indicate the length of a period of time.

since is used when we want to indicate the starting point of a period of time.



She's been talking on the phone — *for two hours.*
since seven o'clock./she came back from work.

since + Past Simple (affirmative)

It has been a long time since we saw him. (...since we didn't see him)

B. yet-already

yet is used only in interrogative and negative sentences and is placed at the end of the sentence.

Have you finished yet?

He hasn't arrived yet.

already is used in affirmative and interrogative sentences; it is usually placed between the auxiliary and the main verb, but can also appear at the end of the sentence for emphasis.

I have already been to the Science Museum.

Have you already seen this film?

You've finished your homework already!

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- This is the second time I _____ that song.
 a. am hearing b. have heard c. hear
- Hello, I _____ about your advertisement in the newspaper.
 a. have been calling b. am calling c. call
- John _____ on a bit of weight lately, and he is trying to lose it.
 a. has put b. is putting c. puts
- The new neighbours _____ their house. It looks nice!
 a. paint b. had painted c. have painted
- Fred _____ me yesterday that they're professional athletes.
 a. told b. has told c. is telling
- Apparently, he _____ them since he was a child.
 a. is knowing b. has known c. has been knowing

B Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Simple, the Present Perfect Progressive or the Past Simple.

1. **Jack:** I think I have lost (lose) my sunglasses.
I have been looking (look) for them since noon, but I can't find them. And they were (be) very expensive!

Amanda: I have lost (lose) three pairs so far and I have learnt (learn) my lesson. I only buy cheap sunglasses now... Maybe you left (leave) them at Harry's house this morning.

Jack: No, I have already asked (already, ask) him.



2. **Debbie:** This is the most interesting book I have ever read (ever, read).

Pat: Where did you get (get) that book?
I have been trying (try) to find it for months now!

Debbie: My brother gave (give) it to me for my birthday.

3. **Tanya:** I'm afraid Tom isn't here. He has been delivering (deliver) newspapers since 7:00 a.m., but he should be back soon.

Peter: He left/has left (leave) three messages on my answering machine but I'm not home, so please tell him to call me at my grandparents' house. I have been staying (stay) with them for the past two weeks, but I forgot (forget) to tell Tom when I last saw (see) him.

C Rephrase the following sentences using the word in brackets.

1. Lucy is swimming in the pool. She started swimming half an hour ago. (**for**)

Lucy has been swimming in the pool for half an hour.

2. Dave has had this computer for three weeks. (**ago**)

Dave bought/got this computer three weeks ago.

3. They went to the supermarket at 6:00 p.m. Now, it's 7:00 p.m.. (**for**)

They have been at the supermarket for an hour.

4. It's 10:00 a.m. and I'm about to start writing my fourth letter. (**so far**)

It's 10:00 a.m. and I have written three letters so far.

5. I started training five months ago. Now, it's August. (**since**)

I have been training since March.

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. He has never driven another car since he started driving.
only This is the only car he has driven since he started driving.
2. The last time I watched TV was a week ago.
for I haven't watched TV for a week.
3. When did he start working for this company?
been How long has he been working for this company?
4. This is her second visit to the dentist this month.
time This is the second time she has visited the dentist this month.
5. Let's not go to a café as I had some coffee earlier.
already Let's not go to a café as I have already had/drunk some coffee.
6. Ray still doesn't know which car to buy.
made Ray (still) hasn't made up his mind which car to buy.
7. We have never experienced such a cold winter in Greece before.
ever It's the coldest winter we have ever experienced in Greece.
8. We bought this house two years ago.
had We have had this house for two years.



Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

call off:	cancel sth
carry on:	continue doing sth
carry out:	perform a task
catch up (with):	(1) reach sb by walking/ running faster (2) reach the same level as sb

1. Mike has been ill for a week. He will have to work really hard to catch up with his class.
2. The match was called off due to bad weather.
3. He will never catch up with me. I'm a far better runner.
4. After the earthquake, the islanders had to carry on with their everyday lives.
5. Studies carried out by the World Health Organization indicate that cities are getting much noisier.

B Complete using prepositions.

1. We were all shocked by the news of the bomb exploding in the city.
2. Children are usually frightened of the dark.
3. All the students were anxious about their exam results.
4. Elen was worried about her grandmother's health.
5. He was puzzled by his colleague's unusual behaviour.
6. Tom was ashamed of what he had done and asked for forgiveness.
7. The writer was surprised by/at the critic's review of his book.
8. The children are afraid of the neighbour's dogs.
9. Tell me more about the country you come from. I'm curious about it.
10. Don't be shy of having your picture taken.
11. She's scared of making the wrong decision.
12. I'm never jealous of people who are wealthy because I'm happy with my life.

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

mention (v):	refer to or speak about sth briefly or incidentally
report (v):	inform some authority about sth that has happened
express (v):	show what you think or feel by saying or doing sth

result (n):	the outcome of an action or situation
effect (of sth on sth else) (n):	(1) the change that sth causes to sth else (2) the power to influence or produce a result
consequence (n):	the result or effect of sth (usually unpleasant)

1. We decided to report the robbery to the police.
2. I can't find the words to express how I feel.
3. How could you forget? I mentioned it to you last night.
4. Pollution has a very harmful effect on our health.
5. If you don't take our advice, you'll have to face the consequences.
6. Did you get your exam results ?

The Future "Will" is used to express:

- a decision one makes at the moment of speaking.
It's getting cold; I'll close the windows.
- predictions or personal opinions about the future, usually with *perhaps* or *probably*, or after the verbs **believe, expect, think, be sure, be afraid**, etc.
I think Arsenal will lose this match.
I'm sure John will be very happy to meet you.
- requests and offers.
Will you do the ironing for me, please?
I'll take you to the airport tomorrow.
- promises, threats, warnings, hopes, fears, invitation, refusal, willingness, determination.
Stop making so much noise or the neighbours will get angry.

"Be going to" is used to express:

- predictions based on evidence.
The sun is shining; it's going to be a lovely day.
- plans or decisions that have already been made.
I'm going to study archaeology this year.
She doesn't like Alan, so she is not going to invite him to her party.

The Future Progressive is used to express:

- actions that will be in progress at a specific time in the future.
This time tomorrow I'll be flying to Rome.
- future actions which have already been planned or are part of a routine.
The president will be visiting Egypt next month.
Tom won't come with us on Sunday; he will be playing basketball (=he does so every Saturday).
- a polite request about someone's plans, especially if we want to ask for a favour.
Will you be using your computer tomorrow?

Time Expressions

next week/month/year, etc., tomorrow, in a week/month/year, etc.

The Future Perfect Simple is used:

- for actions which will have been completed before a specific point of time in the future or before another action in the future (the verb describing the second action is in the **Present Simple**).
By dinner time I will have written all the letters.
I guess John will have stopped working by the time we arrive.

Time Expressions

by, by the time, before

The Future Perfect Progressive is used:

- to show the duration of an action up to a certain point of time in the future. The action may continue further.
By midnight we will have been flying for seven hours.

Time Expressions

by

note

After the words **after, as long as, as soon as, before, by the time, if, provided, providing, until, while, when**, etc. we use the Present Simple, not the Future "Will".

Give my regards to her when she calls.

We can also use the Present Perfect Simple after the above words to emphasise that an action will be completed in the future.

He'll come as soon as he has finished studying.

Phrases with future meaning

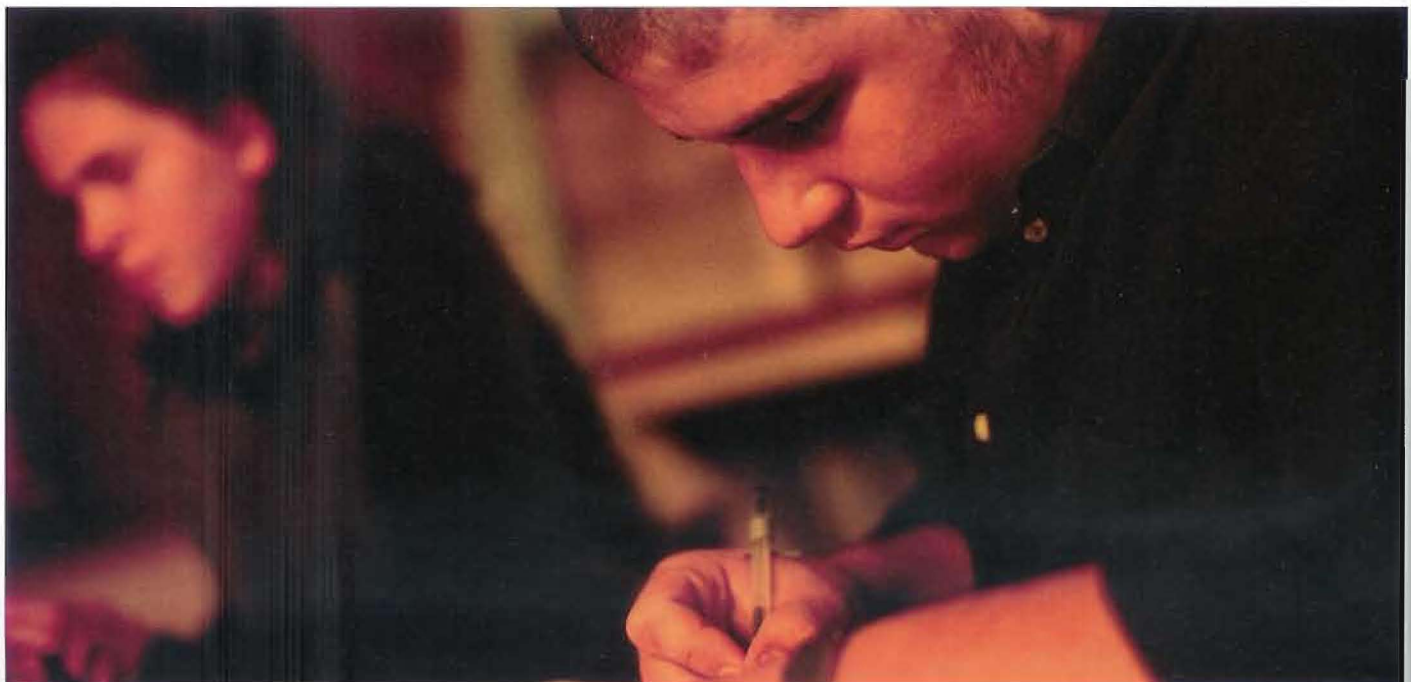
The following expressions indicate that an event will happen very soon.

be (just) about to	} + infinitive	<i>They are about to leave.</i>
be bound to		<i>You're bound to get there on time.</i>
be to		<i>We are to meet tomorrow at 10:00.</i>
be on the point of + -ing		<i>Susan is on the point of collapsing.</i>
no matter who/what/which/where/when whatever/whoever/whenever/wherever	} + present tense	<i>No matter where we go, we'll have a great time.</i>
		<i>Whatever you decide to do, I'll support you.</i>
be due to + infinitive	is used for schedules and timetables.	<i>The plane is due to land in half an hour.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Put the verbs in brackets into the Future "Will", the Future Progressive, the Future Perfect Simple or the Future Perfect Progressive.

- Kathy can't come shopping with us on Saturday morning. She will be having (have) a French lesson.
- Jenny, Ms Kingsley will contact (contact) you as soon as the documents are ready. Will you let (let) me know when she does?
- At lunchtime tomorrow you will be entertaining (entertain) your friends from Mexico, so I will ring (ring) you later on in the evening.
- Will you be going (go) to the concert by car? I'd really appreciate a lift.
- I will have painted (paint) the living room by the time Dad comes home. He'll be so surprised!
- I hope I will have interviewed (interview) all the applicants by the time the manager arrives.
- Do you think that they will have completed (complete) the construction of the tunnel by the end of this year?
- Call David. He will have arrived (arrive) home by now.
- By the time we reach Gstaad, we will have been driving (drive) for twelve hours.
- I will have been studying (study) for three hours by 8:00 pm.



B Choose the correct answers.

- Don't panic, sir. The doctor _____ due to arrive any minute.
 a. is b. will be c. had been
- By the time the train _____, we will have been waiting here for more than half an hour.
 a. had arrived b. will arrive c. arrives
- She _____ the phone no matter who calls her.
 a. won't answer b. won't have answered c. hadn't answered
- They _____ some extra staff next week.
 a. will have employed b. employed c. are going to employ
- I _____ on my guitar for an hour and then we can leave.
 a. am going to practise b. will have practised c. had been practising
- She can't come to the phone right now, she _____ about to leave for her dancing lesson.
 a. will be b. is c. had been
- You _____ able to see much better with these new glasses.
 a. will be b. will have been c. have been
- Brian, _____ me your camera, please?
 a. did you lend b. will you lend c. are you lending

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- The plane takes off in half an hour.
due The plane _____ **is due to take off** _____ in half an hour.
- Her baby will be born in October.
is She _____ **is going to have** _____ a baby in October.
- He is to take his driving test tomorrow morning.
be He _____ **will be taking** _____ his driving test tomorrow morning.
- I'll come with you wherever you go on holiday.
matter I'll come with you _____ **no matter where you go** _____ on holiday.
- The Tigers are likely to win the Cup Final.
probably The Tigers _____ **will probably win** _____ the Cup Final.
- Sam will go scuba diving only if the weather is good.
provided Sam will go scuba diving _____ **provided (that) the weather is** _____ good.
- I will have dinner ready by the time your parents arrive.
prepared I _____ **will have prepared dinner** _____ by the time your parents arrive.
- She started working here at the end of June, nearly two months ago.
been By the end of August, she _____ **will have been working** _____ here for two months.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

come across:	find sth by chance
come along/on:	(1) hurry up (2) encourage sb to do sth
come into:	inherit (money, property or a title)
come round:	(1) to stop by, visit (2) recover consciousness
come up with:	think of and suggest sth (plan, idea, etc.)

1. Come along/on ! We're going to miss the bus.
2. When did Jane come up with this idea? It's perfect!
3. If you come across that CD, could you buy it for me?
4. Simon came into a lot of money after his grandfather's death.
5. It took the boxer five minutes to come round after he was knocked out.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

MISSING THE HUSTLE AND BUSTLE

My father was a police inspector, my mother a teacher. Their decision to move to a small town when I was a child changed my life. It was a very peaceful place and of course living there meant that I had much more freedom to go wherever I pleased. The people were friendly but I missed my close friends, my school and the noisy city I had lived in. As I grew up, I realised that there wasn't much for a young person to do there, except rush into marriage. When I left, my parents were sad, but they realised that staying there would only make me miserable. The big city I live in now is not very far away, so I can visit my parents frequently and have the best of both worlds.

INSPECT, TEACH
DECIDE
PEACE
FREE, FRIEND
NOISE

MARRY
MISERY
FREQUENT

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

wait (for sb/sth) (v):	spend time doing little while expecting sth to happen or sb to arrive
look forward to (doing) sth (v):	anticipate sth to happen
expect (v):	believe that sth will happen, anticipate

boast of/about sth (v):	talk about sth in a way that shows excessive pride
praise sb for sth (v):	express approval of or admiration for sb's achievements or qualities

1. What time do you expect the guests to arrive?
2. I'm looking forward to visiting Spain.
3. Can you wait for me, John?
4. People who boast about their own achievements aren't usually popular.
5. The teacher praised her students for their good exam results.

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. The meeting will start when everyone _____.
a. will arrive b. arrives c. is arriving d. will have arrived
2. We _____ Betty since she moved to our neighbourhood.
 a. have known b. had known c. are knowing d. knew
3. The students were tired. They _____ hard all morning.
 a. had been working b. worked c. have been working d. had worked
4. By this time next month, the builders _____ the house.
a. will complete b. will be completing c. will have completed d. will have been completing
5. "This time next week we _____ on the beach!"
"I can't wait!"
a. are lying b. will be lying c. will have lain d. will have been lying
6. Mark _____ about my cooking! It's so annoying!
a. has always complained b. was always complaining c. is always complaining d. had always complained
7. Sue _____ TV when she heard a knock on the door.
a. watched b. was watching c. has been watching d. has watched
8. By two o'clock, he _____ on the drums for three hours. I hope he stops soon!
 a. will have been practising b. will be practising c. has been practising d. is practising
9. Yesterday, I met an old school friend who I _____ for years.
a. didn't see b. haven't seen c. had seen d. hadn't seen
10. "The phone's ringing!"
"I _____ it!"
a. get b. will get c. will be getting d. got
11. Nancy _____ since she came from work.
 a. has been sleeping b. is sleeping c. slept d. had slept
12. Jack _____ his wallet last week.
a. was losing b. had lost c. has lost d. lost
13. You _____ the wine after the meat is cooked.
a. are adding b. will add c. add d. have added
14. I _____ two letters so far.
 a. have written b. wrote c. had written d. have been writing
15. When we finally got to the airport, the plane _____.
a. has already landed b. landed already c. already landed d. had already landed

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Lucy first started playing tennis in May.
been Lucy has been playing tennis since May.
- I had never read a better book by that author.
best It was the best book I had ever read by that author.
- Scott, is this your wallet?
belong Scott, does this wallet belong to you?
- This is Pete's third attempt at climbing Mount Everest.
time This is the third time Pete has attempted to climb Mount Everest.
- We've arranged to leave by train tomorrow morning.
are We are leaving/are going to leave by train tomorrow morning.
- By the time my favourite TV show starts, I will have dinner ready.
finished By the time my favourite TV show starts, I will have finished cooking dinner.
- It's ages since she last ate spaghetti.
for She hasn't eaten spaghetti for ages.
- They realised that they had taken the wrong turning after driving for an hour.
had They had driven/had been driving for an hour before they realised that they had taken the wrong turning.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- I couldn't _____ her. She is a fast runner.
a. come up with b. catch up with c. bring back d. get away
- When his aunt died, Luke _____ a lot of money.
a. came along b. came across c. came into d. came round
- I'm really worried _____ the boys. They haven't come back yet and it's almost midnight.
a. for b. about c. of d. with
- Are you afraid _____ the dark?
a. with b. by c. at d. of
- We _____ the theft to the insurance company the following morning.
a. replied b. expressed c. mentioned d. reported
- I had to _____ Jerry some money as he didn't have any to get home.
a. let b. lend c. borrow d. gain
- Samantha is _____ good results in her examination.
a. looking forward b. expecting c. waiting d. wanting
- He _____ a lot about the money he makes.
 a. boasts b. praises c. says d. mentions
- I felt awful when I realised that I couldn't pay for the meal because I had _____ my wallet.
 a. forgotten b. left c. let d. lent
- Do you believe in love _____ first sight?
a. with b. from c. at d. by
- This is a lousy excuse! Couldn't you _____ something better?
a. break up b. come up with c. carry on d. ask for
- She _____ the wedding at the last minute.
 a. called off b. carried out c. asked out d. came into

13. A thief _____ our house last month and stole all of my mother's jewellery.
 (a) broke into b. broke in c. broke down d. broke up
14. You could _____ drive me to my house. It really isn't that far.
 a. at last (b) at least c. at present d. at the same time
15. I'm _____ seeing Sally again after two years.
 a. expecting b. waiting c. looking (d) looking forward to

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. This is a very valuable grandfather clock. **VALUE**
2. Katie's illness has kept her away from school for a week. **ILL**
3. Nowadays most teenagers have the freedom to do whatever they please. **FREE**
4. A good friendship will last a lifetime. **FRIEND**
5. An inspection of the building was made and it was declared safe. **INSPECT**
6. Naturally, we are concerned about our son's progress at school. **NATURE**
7. The children were playing noisily in the garden. **NOISE**
8. The children looked unhappy and miserable. **MISERY**

C Choose the correct answers.



Last weekend, my friend Anne and I decided to take a road trip. (1) _____, we were going to take Anne's car, but it had (2) _____ a couple of days before. As a (3) _____, we decided to (4) _____ one for 30 dollars a day. We both took Monday off from (5) _____, so that we could have a full four days. Our goal was to drive from New York to Washington D.C., and back. The trip itself was great. The weather was beautiful, and we (6) _____ many interesting places along the way. There was a lot to (7) _____ in

Washington, so we spent two days there. The sad thing was that I had forgotten my camera, even though Anne had specifically (8) _____ that she didn't have one to bring along. So, we bought lots of postcards to remind us of our trip. Even though we arrived back a bit tired on Monday night, the trip was well worth it!

1. a. At present 4. a. hire
 (b) At first (b) rent
 c. At least c. let
 d. At most d. buy
2. a. broken up 5. a. job
 b. broken into b. task
 c. broken in (c) work
 (d) broken down d. duty
3. (a) result 6. (a) came across
 b. consequence b. came along
 c. effect c. came into
 d. reason d. came round
7. a. look
 b. notice
 (c) see
 d. watch
8. (a) mentioned
 b. reported
 c. expressed
 d. told

Infinitive Forms

Time Reference	Forms	Active	Passive
Present / Future	Present Infinitive, simple	(to) give	(to) be given
	Present Infinitive, progressive	(to) be giving	—
Past	Perfect Infinitive, simple	(to) have given	(to) have been given
	Perfect Infinitive, progressive	(to) have been giving	—

note

Negative Form: not + infinitive

Full Infinitive (to + infinitive)

The **full infinitive** is used:

1. to express **purpose**

Examples

She went to the post office to collect her parcel.

2. after certain **verbs** (as their object):

afford	decide	hesitate	plan	remind
agree	demand	hope	prepare	seem
appear	deserve	learn	pretend	swear
arrange	expect	manage	promise	tend
ask	fail	mean	refuse	threaten
beg	forget	need	regret	volunteer
claim	happen	offer	remember	want, etc.

She pretended not to have seen him.

Unemployment levels tend to rise in Europe.

They volunteered to help us.

3. after the **object** of certain verbs:

advise	challenge	force	order	teach
allow	convince	hire	permit	tell
ask	encourage	instruct	persuade	urge
beg	expect	invite	remind	want
cause	forbid	need	require	warn, etc.

My friend invited me to join them.

They persuaded her not to see him again.

note

Help + object can take either a full or bare infinitive.

Could you help me (to) pack my suitcases?

4. after verbs followed by a **question word** (who, what, which, where, how, **but not** why):

ask	forget	remember	understand
decide	know	show	wonder, etc.
explain	learn	tell	

Have you decided where to go for Christmas?

Do you remember what to buy?

Could you show me how to use your computer?

5. after certain **adjectives**:

afraid	careful	lucky	relieved	surprised
amazed	determined	pleased	sad	upset
anxious	glad	prepared	shocked	willing, etc.
astonished	happy	ready	sorry	

Jack was relieved to hear his son was out of danger.

You have to be careful not to say anything insulting.

6. after: would like, would love, would prefer	<i>I would prefer to be on holiday instead of working.</i>
7. after: the first/second/next/last/best , etc., instead of a relative clause	<i>If anything happens, you'll be the first to know. Joan was the last to hear about the accident.</i>
8. after certain nouns (pleasure, shock, etc.)	<i>It was a great pleasure to meet you.</i>
9. after some, any, no and their compounds	<i>I'll make you something to eat. He doesn't have anywhere to stay.</i>
10. after the following structures: • it + be + adjective (+ of/for + object) • so + adjective + as , in formal or polite requests	<i>It's very comforting to listen to your voice. It was very kind of her to call. It is necessary for him to have a rest. Would you be so kind as to help me with these suitcases?</i>
11. with too/enough : too + adjective/adverb } negative meaning enough + noun } adjective/adverb + enough } positive meaning	<i>This shirt is too large for me to wear it. This shirt is large enough for me to wear it.</i>
12. after only , for emphasis or expressing disappointment	<i>He passed the written test only to fail the oral exam.</i>
13. at the beginning of the sentence: as a subject or in fixed expressions (to be honest, to tell you the truth, to begin with, etc.)	<i>To lend money is a risky business. To be honest, I didn't want to meet him.</i>

Bare Infinitive (infinitive without to)

The bare infinitive is used:	Examples
1. after most modal verbs (can/could, may/might, will/would, shall/should, must, etc.)	<i>You should wake up earlier in the morning.</i>
2. after: would rather, would sooner, had better	<i>Jane would rather go to California by plane. You'd better hurry up, we're late again!</i>
3. after the verbs hear, let, listen to, make, notice, observe, see, watch , etc. These verbs (except for <i>let</i>) take the full infinitive in the passive voice.	<i>Will you let me go to the party tonight? She heard him come in. He was seen to open the door. He was made to do some extra work.</i>
4. In the following structures: Why...?/ Why not...? (for suggestions and advice)	<i>Why not have another drink? Why walk when I could give you a lift? My son does nothing all day but watch TV.</i>
do + $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{anything} \\ \text{everything} \\ \text{nothing} \end{array} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{but} \\ \text{except} \end{array} \right\} + \text{infinitive}$	

Perfect Infinitive

The perfect infinitive refers to actions or events that have already finished.

The perfect infinitive is used:	Examples
1. with modal verbs (could, would, may, might, must, etc.)	<i>He could have studied more, but he didn't.</i>
2. after verbs such as: appear, claim, expect, hope, happen, pretend, promise, seem , etc.	<i>He appears to have left the country.</i>
3. after certain verbs in the passive voice (personal construction): believe say think consider suppose understand, etc.	<i>She is believed to have secretly met the Prime Minister.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Don't hesitate _____ for help if you need it.
 a. to ask b. ask c. to be asked
2. Why not _____ him and ask him out on a date?
a. to call b. call c. to have called
3. I would prefer _____ somewhere less noisy.
 a. to go b. to be gone c. go
4. John and Karen persuaded me _____ the conference.
a. not to be attending b. not to attend c. not to have attended
5. It's a pleasure _____ you again after so long.
 a. to see b. to be seeing c. to have seen
6. _____ honest, I have never done this type of work before.
a. Be b. To be c. To have been
7. She claims _____ the Prince.
 a. to have met b. to be meeting c. to meet
8. I must _____ the telephone bill by tomorrow.
a. be paying b. to pay c. pay
9. The famous actor Jerry Grant was heard to say that he would _____ for President.
 a. run b. have run c. to run
10. You could _____ Aunt Martha while you were in London.
a. visit b. have visited c. be visiting

B Circle the correct answers.

1. The Johnsons seem to **be having** / have had a great time at the Wyatt resort, where they are staying this summer.
2. He doesn't need — / to be given any more medication.
3. Jack is willing to **be volunteering** / volunteer his services at the club.
4. I failed to **arrive** / have arrived at the meeting on time.
5. It was a shock to **learn** / be learning that she had been missing for three months.
6. The robbers were made — / to give themselves up.
7. He was surprised to **have awarded** / have been awarded a medal for bravery.
8. I'm always the last to — find out about anything in this office.
9. The police warned the fans **to not** / not to approach the rock star.
10. He might **to** / — be promoted next year.



C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- It seems that Mike isn't enjoying himself tonight.
appears Mike appears not to be enjoying himself tonight.
- At the wedding, she was constantly gossiping about the other guests.
nothing At the wedding, she did nothing but/except gossip about the other guests.
- Learning that no one was hurt during the fire was a great relief.
relieved We were (greatly) relieved to learn that no one was hurt during the fire.
- When they arrived at the airport, they discovered that they had left their tickets at home.
only They arrived at the airport only to discover that they had left their tickets at home.
- The kidnappers forced the woman to get into the car.
made The kidnappers made the woman get into the car.
- Dr Thompson studied the symptoms of the disease before anyone else did.
first Dr Thompson was the first to study the symptoms of the disease.
- People say that he has travelled the world.
said He is said to have travelled the world.
- Neither of them was old enough to have a driving licence.
too Both of them were too young to have a driving licence.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

get along/on

(with sb): form or have a friendly relationship with sb

get away: escape

get away with: go unpunished for doing sth wrong or risky

get by: continue to live in spite of difficulties

get off: (1) take yourself off a horse or bike (2) leave a plane, train, boat, etc.

get on: (1) place yourself on a horse or bike (2) enter a plane, train, boat, etc.

get on with: continue doing sth, especially after an interruption or in spite of difficulties

get over: (1) recover from an illness (2) overcome a problem

- I find it difficult to get by on the money I earn.
- Wendy is very easy-going and can get along/on with anyone.
- The boy got up and kindly offered his seat to an old man.
- It took Sue two weeks to get over the flu.
- If I don't get on with this work, I'll never finish it.
- Joe ran as fast as he could and managed to get on the bus just before it left.
- The thief got away before the police arrived.
- Sue, could you help your little brother get off his bike? He doesn't want to ride it anymore!
- She always gets away with not doing any housework! It's just not fair!

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

for ages:	for a very long time
for a change:	doing sth different than usual
(take sth/sb)	
for granted:	accept sth as normal without thinking about it
for hire/sale:	available to be hired, rented/available to be sold
for a while:	for a short period of time

- The house was for sale, so we decided to buy it.
- Red is not a colour I would usually wear, but I think I'll buy that red dress for a change.
- We haven't seen the Johnsons for ages! More than ten years, I think.
- I'll be gone for a while. You won't have to wait long for me.
- Nowadays, many children take everything for granted.

C Complete using the correct form of the verbs given.

THE ART OF ADVERTISING

In our life/lives we are constantly bombarded by advertisements whose role is to make products attractive enough so that people will want to buy them immediately.

There has been a lot of discussion on the powerful effects of advertising. Are ads really useful? Are they truthful? Do they give us a realistic idea of the product? People are rarely in agreement on any of these questions, but the fact is that ads are helpful in letting people know the wide variety of goods available.

LIVE, ADVERTISE
ATTRACT
IMMEDIATE
DISCUSS
USE, TRUE, REAL
AGREE
HELP

D Complete using the words given.

debt (n):	amount of money that you owe to a person or a bank
loan (n):	money that you borrow (usually from a bank)
donation (n):	contribution to a charity or other organisation
fine (n):	punishment in which sb has to pay a sum of money because they have done sth wrong or broken a rule
charge (n):	amount of money sb has to pay for a service or to buy sth
tip (n):	extra money given to sb (e.g. a waiter, porter, etc.) in order to thank them for their service
change (n):	(1) coins (2) money that you receive when you pay for sth with more money than it costs because you do not have the exact amount of money
currency (n):	the money used in a particular country
profit (n):	money sb gains when they are paid more for sth than it costs them to make, get or do
income (n):	money sb earns or receives
bill (n):	a written statement of money that you owe for goods or services
receipt (n):	a piece of paper that you get from sb as confirmation that they have received money or goods from you

- The magistrate imposed a £100 fine on the man for throwing litter on the street.
- The income Sandra earns allows her to live very comfortably.
- I like to make donations to worthwhile causes.
- Do you make a large profit out of the jewellery you sell?
- If I don't get good service in a restaurant, I never leave a tip.
- Come back, sir! You forgot your change.
- The Jones took out a loan to buy a new car.
- There's no extra charge for delivery.
- What currency is used in Austria?
- The national debt is always increasing and as a result the cost of living rises.
- I must pay this electricity bill by next week.
- Make sure you get a receipt for the furniture you buy.

-ing Forms

	Form	Affirmative	Negative
Present	verb + -ing	<i>giving</i>	<i>not giving</i>
Perfect	having + past participle	<i>having given</i>	<i>not having given</i>

Use

The **-ing form** is used:

1. as a **noun** (subject or object of a verb)

Examples

Swimming is a very good form of exercise.

I have some shopping to do this afternoon.

2. after a **preposition** or **verb + preposition**

Touch your toes without bending your knees.

Helen is excited about studying abroad.

3. after certain **verbs** (as their object):

admit	dislike	mention	recall
appreciate	enjoy	mind	recommend
avoid	fancy	miss	resent
consider	finish	postpone	resist
delay	imagine	practise	risk
deny	involve	prefer	suggest
discuss	keep (on)	quit	tolerate, etc.

Tony dislikes driving small cars.

Would you mind waiting for a moment?

Have you finished reading that book?

He avoided answering my question.

• **prefer** can also take a full infinitive.

prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive

• **mind** can also go with an if-clause.

Some of these verbs can also take a that-clause.

I prefer swimming to playing football.

(general preference)

I prefer to watch TV at night. (specific preference)

I prefer to start exercising rather than go on a diet.

Would you mind if I opened the door?

He never admitted that he was wrong.

4. after verbs or expressions with **to**:

be/get accustomed to	look forward to
be/get used to	object to
in addition to	take to

The children were not used to living in the country.

They are looking forward to travelling abroad.

5. after certain **expressions**:

as well as	it's no good/use
be in favour of	it's worth
can't stand/help	there's no chance of
feel like	there's no point in
have difficulty (in)	what's the point of...?
how about	what's the use of...?

As well as going to the cinema, he likes reading science fiction stories.

I don't feel like going out tonight.

She can't help crying whenever she peels onions.

6. after the verbs **need**, **want**, **require**, etc. with a passive meaning.

My car needs repairing. (=My car needs to be repaired.)

7. after the verb **go**, indicating physical activities

We are planning to go skiing this weekend.

8. after the verbs

catch	} + object
find	
leave	

She caught him stealing some money from the drawer.

I found her sleeping on the sofa.

They left me waiting in the rain for half an hour.

9. after:

be busy
spend/waste + expression of money/time

She is busy feeding the baby.

Every day they spend two hours studying French.

You shouldn't waste your time watching soap operas.

Infinitive or -ing form with no difference in meaning

- The verbs **like, love, hate, begin, start, continue, intend, prefer, can't bear**, etc. can take either a full infinitive or -ing with little or no difference in meaning:

Tim loves playing/to play tennis.

notes

- like + -ing**: we enjoy something.
Mary likes reading poetry.
- like + full infinitive**: we think that something is a good idea.
I like to have my tyres checked whenever I buy petrol.
- begin, start**: usually the -ing form goes with simple tenses and the infinitive with progressive tenses (to avoid having two -ing forms together).
It started raining an hour ago. *Be quiet! The lecturer is beginning to speak!*
- advise, allow, encourage, permit, recommend, require** + -ing
object + full infinitive
The manager does not allow smoking in the office.
The manager does not allow anyone to smoke in the office.

Infinitive or -ing form with different meanings

- Some other verbs can take either -ing or infinitive, but the meaning is different.

try + -ing: make an experiment.

If you want to get rid of your sore throat, try drinking something hot.

try + full infinitive: make an effort.

I'll try to persuade her to come with us, but I don't think she will change her mind.

remember
forget
regret + **-ing** We refer to something that has already happened.

I remember visiting Berlin in 1982.

remember
forget
regret + **full infinitive** we remember/forget/regret something before doing it.

Don't forget to go to the supermarket.

go on + -ing: the action continues.

He was so fascinated by the book that he went on reading it for hours.

go on + full infinitive: the action changes.

When she finished school, she went on to study Medicine.

stop + -ing: the action was stopped and not repeated.

They had a major argument and stopped talking to each other.

stop + full infinitive: the action was interrupted, but probably continued afterwards.

I was writing a letter, but I stopped to answer the phone.

see **notice**
hear **watch**
smell **observe**
feel **listen to, etc.** + **-ing** for actions which are incomplete or still in progress.

I was walking past the reception hall when I saw him playing the piano. (=I witnessed a part of the action.)

see **watch**
hear **observe**
feel **listen to**
notice, etc. + **bare infinitive** for complete actions.

We saw him play the piano at a concert. (=I witnessed the whole action, from the beginning to the end.)

smell can take only an -ing form.

He could smell something burning.

notes

- The subject of the -ing form can be different from the subject of the verb. In this case, it can be a **noun**, an **object pronoun**, a **possessive adjective** or a **noun in the possessive case**.
Angela objected to Michael/him/his/Michael's going on holiday to Japan.
- excuse, forgive, pardon, prevent, understand** + possessive adjective + -ing form
Forgive my being so fussy, but everything has to be perfect.
- prevent** + possessive adjective/case + -ing
sb + from + doing sth
She tried to prevent his/her son's seeing Jane.
She tried to prevent her son from seeing Jane.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.

- It was Mr Kent who suggested Mary's studying (study) abroad.
- You don't expect me to believe (believe) that you actually met Orlando Bloom, do you?
- The board of directors discussed the project, then went on to discuss (discuss) another topic.
- Why continue to work/working (work) there if you don't like your job?
- He regrets not going (not go) to see his grandfather in Paris.
- It's worth shopping (shop) at Stacey's as it's very cheap.
- My doctor doesn't permit me to eat (eat) red meat.
- Greg would rather spend (spend) the holidays skiing (ski) than sunbathe/sunbathing (sunbathe) on a beach somewhere.
- I was driving home when I noticed some workers putting up (put up) new traffic lights on Coronation Street.
- Anyone can get (get) used to living (live) a life of luxury.
- Will you quit complaining (complain)! It doesn't help (to) solve (solve) the problem.
- If you ever decide to sell (sell) your car, let me know (know).
- I would like you to water (water) the plants for me at the weekend.
- I clearly remember setting (set) my alarm clock before going (go) to bed last night.
- These plants require watering (water) every day.
- I resent you speaking (speak) to me like that! Have some respect!
- It would be good for the children to play (play) outdoors more often.
- I promised to take (take) Jill to the party, but I don't feel like going (go) now.
- Don't waste your time looking for (look for) the document. Ask Mr Gale.
- Please, excuse his leaving (leave) so early. He wants to catch up (catch up) with his studying (study).

B Choose the sentence closest in meaning to the given one.

- Even though the telephone rang, he went on playing his violin.
 - He didn't continue to play the violin after the telephone rang.
 - He continued to play the violin despite the fact that the telephone was ringing.
 - He played the violin until the telephone rang.
- Jane forgot to put a stamp on the letter before she sent it.
 - Jane doesn't remember whether she put a stamp on the letter or not.
 - Jane put a stamp on the letter but she doesn't remember doing so.
 - Jane didn't put a stamp on the letter because she didn't remember to do so.
- Sue regrets selling her car.
 - Sue decided not to sell her car because it would be a mistake.
 - Sue may not sell her car.
 - Sue sold her car but now thinks it was a mistake.
- We stopped to buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
 - We bought a bottle of wine on our way to the Johnsons.
 - We no longer buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
 - We didn't buy a bottle of wine before visiting the Johnsons.
- Charlie couldn't sleep last night, so he tried listening to music but it didn't help.
 - Charlie made an effort to listen to music but he couldn't
 - Charlie thought listening to music might help but he was wrong.
 - Charlie listened to music and fell asleep.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- It wasn't easy for her to find a place to stay on the island.
difficulty She had difficulty (in) finding a place to stay on the island.
- I can't wait to tell Karen the good news.
forward I'm looking forward to telling Karen the good news.
- When they arrived home, their dog was sleeping in his kennel.
found When they arrived home, they found their dog sleeping in his kennel.
- The teacher doesn't permit eating in the classroom.
anyone The teacher doesn't permit anyone to eat in the classroom.
- She never appeared on TV again after the scandal became known.
stopped She stopped appearing on TV after the scandal became known.
- The boys said that they hadn't broken the window.
denied The boys denied breaking/having broken the window.
- He continued to interrupt me although I had told him to stop.
kept He kept (on) interrupting me although I had told him to stop.
- The police will prevent his leaving the country.
from The police will prevent him from leaving the country.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

give away: (1) reveal information or tell a secret

(2) give sth to sb free of charge

give back: return sth you have borrowed or taken

give in: (1) admit that you are defeated

(2) do sth you didn't want to distribute some things among a number of people

give out: distribute some things among a number of people

give up: (1) quit an effort

(2) resign from your job

- At the end of the year, the students had to give back all the books they had borrowed from the library.
- Jenny kept annoying her parents until they gave in to her demands.
- The rescue team gave up the search when it got dark.
- The chocolate company were giving away/out free chocolate bars during the promotion of their new product.
- Make sure you don't give away our hideout to anyone.

B Complete using prepositions.

- You shouldn't laugh at other people's misfortunes.
- My family were very proud of me when I won a scholarship to Oxford.
- Jenny is keen on Chinese food and cooks it at least twice a week.
- She is so fond of her dog that if anything happened to it, she'd be devastated.
- I'm very excited about my new job.
- Dave is interested in ancient Greek art, so he's thinking of taking a course in it.
- That girl is smiling at us. Do you know her?
- He has developed an interest in computers lately.
- Stop joking about such a serious subject!
- Are you pleased with the service provided by the staff?

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

SOMEONE TO WATCH US

There has been a significant reduction in police popularity in the last few years. That's why this week a public relations campaign is being launched to make people more sensitive to the role of the police officer. The ads will stress that police do more than just give motorists speeding tickets. They often act as unofficial social workers, visit schools and talk to students, familiarising them with traffic signs and warning them of various dangers. Being a police officer is risky, considering that every day they deal with criminals such as thieves and even murderers. In conclusion, the campaign wants to make the public realise that even though in some cases the police's approach may seem extreme, they cannot ignore the possibility of injury or even death while on duty.

REDUCE

SENSE

MOTOR

VARY, RISK

CRIME

MURDER, CONCLUDE

POSSIBLE, DIE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

crew (n): people who work on a ship or aircraft

staff (n): people who work for a company or organisation, employees

team (n): group of people who work together or play a particular sport or game together

employee (n): a person who is paid to work for an organisation or for another person

colleague (n): a person you work with (at a professional job)

client (n): a person or organisation that receives a service from a professional person or another organisation in return for money

customer (n): a person who buys goods or services, especially from a shop

guest (n): sb who is visiting you or is at an event because they have been invited

host (n): sb who receives or entertains guests

visitor (n): sb who is visiting a person or a place

1. The hospital staff are on strike today.

2. I work for a law firm which has a lot of business people as clients.

3. My team played well but we lost the game.

4. I always buy my groceries from this shop. I am a regular customer here, so I expect good service.

5. There weren't many people on the plane; just the ten of us and the crew.

6. Whenever I need help at work, I can always rely on my colleagues.

7. Employers often complain that they can't find reliable employees/staff.

8. All visitors entering the factory must wear this card.

9. We had guests/visitors staying with us for ten days.

10. Our host provided us with a delicious meal.



07 Modal Verbs I

The modal verbs are: **can, could, may, might, must, will, would, shall, should, need, have to, ought to, used to.** **Need** may also be used as a main verb.

Modal verbs do not have all tense forms and

- are followed by a bare infinitive (present or perfect) except for **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
- have the same form in all persons, except **have to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).
- form questions and negations without auxiliary verbs, except **have to, used to** and **need** (when it is used as a main verb).

*You shouldn't leave your dog alone at home.
 You should have answered the phone.
 He needs to see the doctor.
 She must call the plumber immediately.
 Your car needs to be repaired/repairing.
 Can he repair his car?
 He cannot/can't repair his car.
 Do you have to see the doctor tomorrow?
 He doesn't need to get up early every day.*

Modal verbs have several meanings and uses.

A. Ability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
Can Be able to	Ability in the present or future. Can is more commonly used for the present.	<i>Can you play the guitar? Mary will be able to play tennis after she has had some lessons.</i>
Could Was/were able to	Could expresses general ability in the past. Was/were able to express ability in a particular situation in the past. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Both can be used in negative sentences with no difference in meaning. • If the action was very difficult, we can use managed to instead of was/were able to. 	<i>He could swim at the age of five. George could swim, so he was able to save the boy from drowning. He had a terrible accident but managed to survive.</i>

note

Perfect and future tenses are formed only with be able to.
*Nick hasn't been able to find a job yet.
 I think Sandra will be able to pick you up from the airport.*

B. Possibility

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
can could may might	present infinitive (simple or progressive) +	Possibility in the present or future. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can is used when something is only sometimes possible
could may might	perfect infinitive (simple or progressive) +	Possibility in the past. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In negative sentences only may not and might not can be used to express possibility in the past (not could not)
could might	present infinitive +	For an event that was possible in the past but did not eventually happen. <i>Be careful! You could have crashed into that tree!</i>

note

Possibility can also be expressed with **be likely to**.

Mary is likely to arrive late.

It is likely that Mary will arrive late.

May and **might** expressing possibility cannot introduce interrogative sentences; **Do you think...?** and **Is it likely...?** are used instead.

Do you think she might be at home?

Is it likely that she is still at home?

C. Probability

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
should } ought to } +	present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Probability in the present or future. <i>There are plenty of flats available for rent in town. It should/ought to be easy enough to find a place to live.</i>
should } ought to } +	present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Something was expected to happen in the past, but either didn't happen or it is not certain if it happened. <i>She has been working very efficiently lately; she should/ought to have been promoted.</i>

D. Deduction

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
must +	present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the present or future. (We are fairly sure that something is true.) <i>John must be at the dentist's; he was complaining about a toothache.</i>
can't +	present infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the present or future. (We are almost certain that something is not true.) <i>The 6:30 train to Liverpool can't be leaving yet; it's only 6:10.</i>
must +	perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Positive deduction about the past. <i>I can't find my glasses; I must have left them at the office.</i>
can't } couldn't }	perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Negative deduction about the past. <i>He can't/couldn't have been working yesterday; it was Sunday.</i>

E. Permission

Asking for permission		Synonymous expressions
Can I (possibly)...? Could I...? May I...? Might I...?	Informal ↓ Formal	I wonder if I could/might... Is it all right if I...? Would it be possible for me to...? Do/Would you mind if I...?

F. Requests

	Modal Verbs	Examples
Informal	can will	<i>Can you help me with the ironing?</i> <i>Will you please put out your cigarette?</i>
Polite/Formal	could, may would	<i>Could/May I have some coffee, please?</i> <i>Would you pass me the salt, please?</i>

5. It's frustrating when you can't communicate with foreigners.

able It's frustrating when you aren't able to communicate with foreigners.

6. Perhaps you didn't buy that watch from this shop.

could You could have bought that watch from another shop.

7. Gary couldn't remember where he had put his wallet.

was Gary was not able to remember/was unable to remember where he had put his wallet.

8. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing-up.

will Karen, will you help me with the washing-up?

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

count on:	rely on sb
cut down (on):	reduce the consumption of sth
cut off:	(1) stop providing sth (2) interrupt (e.g. a telephone conversation)
cut up:	cut sth into several smaller pieces
end up:	eventually arrive somewhere or find yourself in a situation, usually without planning to

1. We hadn't paid the bill, so our water supply was cut off.
2. I'm afraid I'll end up failing my exams if I don't study harder.
3. I can never count on my brother for help in times of emergency.
4. The doctor told the diabetic patient to cut down on sugar.
5. The small boy's mother cut up his food into small pieces to enable him to eat it easily.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

by accident:	not intentionally
by air/rail/road/sea:	travelling via that route
by bus/car/plane/boat:	travelling using a particular means of transport
by chance:	unexpectedly, not planning to
by cheque:	payment by means of cheque, not using cash
by force:	using violent action
by heart:	when you learn sth so well that you can remember it without having to read it
by mistake:	in error
by oneself:	alone; without help
by phone/post:	using that particular means of communication

1. I don't have any cash on me, so I'll have to pay you by cheque.
2. When I feel depressed, I like to sit by myself and read a book.
3. The boys went across the lake by boat.
4. I picked up the wrong keys by accident/by mistake and couldn't get into the office.
5. The villagers wouldn't surrender, so the enemy soldiers took the village by force.
6. The television advertisement says that you can order the book either by phone or by post.
7. I learnt the poem off by heart to say at our end-of-year celebrations.
8. Paul found the lost document completely by chance/by accident.
9. When my brother bought his new car, he travelled everywhere by road only.

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

DON'T GIVE UP HOPE!

The economic crisis facing many countries today has created serious unemployment problems. Energetic young people, willing to work, are confronted by many difficulties when trying to find a job. Filling in countless application forms and hearing that they are unsuitable for the job because they don't have the right qualifications can be very disheartening. Finding a job seems just impossible. However, their disappointment shouldn't affect them nor make them give up. There is no straightforward solution other than patience and persistence.

EMPLOY, ENERGY
DIFFICULT
APPLY, SUIT
QUALIFY
POSSIBLE
DISAPPOINT
SOLVE, PATIENT

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

travel (v)(n): going from one place to another

trip (n): a short journey to a place and back again

tour (n): an organised trip during which you visit different places

voyage (n): a journey by ship or spacecraft

cruise (n): a holiday during which you travel on a ship

flight (n): a journey by plane

journey (n): travelling from one place to another

route (n): the way from one place to another



1. Our business trip to Brussels was productive and very pleasant.
2. What's the quickest route from your house to the city centre?
3. As soon as they arrived, they went on a tour of the city.
4. At the airport they told us that the flight to Rome had been cancelled.
5. Instead of going to an island, we decided to go on a luxury cruise around the Mediterranean.
6. People say that the safest and quickest way to travel is by aeroplane.
7. The journey from Boston to Montreal by car takes around five hours.
8. The old captain had spent his life making voyages to the Far East.

A. Offers

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
will	To be willing to do something for someone else.	<i>I'll make you a sandwich if you are hungry.</i>
Will (you)...?	Informal offers and invitations.	<i>Will you have some tea?</i>
can could Can I...? Could I...? Shall I...? (= do you want me to...)	To offer to do something for someone else.	<i>I can / could lend you my umbrella. Is there anything I could do to help? Can I take your coat? Shall I post this letter for you?</i>
Would you like } prefer } + noun full infinitive	Polite or formal offers and invitations.	<i>Would you like a drink? Would you like me to help? Would you prefer to stay here with us? Would you rather have a cheese sandwich?</i>
Would you rather + bare infinitive		

B. Suggestions

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
can	Informal suggestions	<i>We can go to the cinema, if you like.</i>
shall could	Polite or formal suggestions	<i>Shall we go shopping on Saturday? We could go for a swim in the afternoon.</i>

note

Suggestions can also be expressed by:

Let's + bare infinitive: *Let's play tennis.*

Why don't...?: *Why don't we go for a walk?*

How about + **noun:** *How about some more coffee?*

How about + **-ing form:** *How about having a pizza for dinner?*

C. Advice

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
shall	To ask for advice.	<i>Shall I dye my hair?</i>
should ought to } + present infinitive (simple or progressive)	To ask for and give advice. To say what is generally right or wrong.	<i>I think you ought to see a doctor. You shouldn't be watching TV now; you should be studying.</i>
had better + bare infinitive	To give strong advice; it often expresses a threat or warning and is stronger than should/ought to.	<i>You'd better not argue with him. He'd better study harder if he wants to pass the exam.</i>
should ought to } + perfect infinitive (simple or progressive)	Something should have been done but did not eventually happen.	<i>You shouldn't have lied to your parents. They ought to have informed us earlier.</i>

D. Habits

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
used to	For past habits and situations that are no longer true. • Interrogative and negative sentences are formed with did .	<i>As a child, she used to be very difficult.</i> <i>Did they use to go fishing every Sunday?</i> <i>He didn't use to be so lazy.</i>
would + present infinitive	To describe past habits or a person's typical behaviour in the past.	<i>My grandmother would give me a bar of chocolate whenever I visited her.</i>
will	To describe a person's typical behaviour at present.	<i>When John is happy, he will sing all day.</i>

E. Obligation - Necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
must	Internal obligation: the speaker feels that he or someone else is obliged to do something.	<i>I must repair the roof before winter comes.</i> <i>You must get up early tomorrow.</i>
have to have got to	External obligation: it comes from facts, not from the speaker's opinion or feelings. • have (got) to can be used with adverbs of frequency.	<i>Policemen have to wear a uniform. (regulation)</i> <i>I've got to see my dentist tomorrow. (I have an appointment)</i> <i>Do you often have to work at weekends?</i>
need + — noun — -ing form — full infinitive — bare infinitive	Necessity • When need is a main verb, interrogative and negative sentences are formed with do/did .	<i>She needs a new pair of gloves.</i> <i>This room needs painting.</i> <i>Do I need to take an umbrella?</i> <i>Need I take an umbrella?</i>
ought to	We remind someone of a duty or obligation.	<i>You ought to post these letters today.</i>

note

Must is used only for the present; for the past and the future we use the forms of **have to**, expressing either internal or external obligation.

He had to leave earlier yesterday.

They will soon have to tell him the truth.

F. Absence of necessity

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
don't have to haven't got to needn't don't need to	It is not necessary to do something.	<i>I don't have to/haven't got to cook dinner tonight; we are going to a restaurant.</i> <i>You needn't take your jacket. It isn't cold.</i> <i>He doesn't need to work that hard.</i>
needn't + perfect infinitive	Something was not necessary but it was done.	<i>You needn't have bought any magazines; I've got plenty.</i>
didn't need to + infinitive	Something was not necessary, and it is not clear if it was done or not.	<i>They didn't need to pay anything extra for the tour.</i>

G. Prohibition

Modal verbs	Use	Examples
mustn't can't	Prohibition Not being allowed to do something.	<i>You mustn't enter this room.</i> <i>We can't use this equipment.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Complete the sentences using *can*, *should*, *would*, *mustn't*, *have to* or *don't have to*.

- You mustn't smoke during take-off.
- Would you like some more tea?
- I'm afraid we have to cancel our skiing trip.
- Can I get you a drink?
- You don't have to do any cooking as I've already prepared something.
- You should have told her the truth earlier. She wouldn't have been so angry.
- I was a very good student and I would always do my homework.
- We can go swimming if you like. It's warm today.

B Circle the correct answers.

- Mary:** The children must / need new sports shoes, but I don't have time to go shopping.
Gary: I will / would take them shopping if you want.
- You shouldn't / mustn't have been driving so carelessly! You could have killed someone.
- Mike:** Bill likes computer games. He would / will sit in front of his computer for hours.
Lucy: Yes, but you ought to / shall encourage him to take up other activities as well.
- Tom:** I need / must hurry. I don't want to miss the bus and keep Sally waiting.
Jack: You mustn't / needn't go by bus. I could / should drive you there if you like.
- Debbie:** Why don't / How about we buy him a silk tie?
Steve: No, he doesn't wear ties. We would / can always get him a nice shirt, though.
- All the employees in this company had to / must work overtime every day next week.
- With a temperature like that, you should / need be in bed. You needn't / shouldn't be playing outside!
- I'm sorry, sir, but you mustn't / can't see Dr Brown today. You have to / need have an appointment.
Is Tuesday afternoon OK?
- They needn't / didn't need to buy any more bread. There was plenty at home.
- Angela:** I didn't need to / didn't use to exercise regularly, but now that I have more free time, I do.
Peter: What do you think... Shall / Will I start exercising?
Angela: Sure, but you had / would better consult your doctor first.

C Choose the correct answers.

- I _____ buy a present for Mary because her birthday is on Saturday.
 (a) need to b. need c. am needing to d. will need
- You _____ have lied to your Dad about taking the car.
 (a) shouldn't b. couldn't c. mustn't d. can't
- Ann, you really _____ have studied a bit harder for the exam.
 a. must b. need to (c) ought to d. would
- Tom _____ to see a doctor. He's been ill for the past weeks.
 a. should (b) needs c. must d. ought to
- We _____ worry about getting to the airport on time; it's really close by.
 a. couldn't b. ought not to c. can't (d) needn't

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- You were wrong to drive through the red light.
should You should not have driven through the red light.
- Our children were never in the habit of telling lies.
used Our children never used to tell lies.
- Taking photographs inside the museum is strictly prohibited.
not You must not take photographs inside the museum.
- You are not obliged to come if you have something else to do.
have You don't have to come if you have something else to do.
- Shall I do the shopping for you?
like Would you like me to do the shopping for you?
- It wasn't necessary for you to wake up so early.
needn't You needn't have woken up so early.
- If I were you, I wouldn't borrow his camera without asking.
better You had better not borrow his camera without asking.
- It is necessary for her to have an international driving licence.
has She has to have an international driving licence.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

fall behind: not make progress or move forward as fast as you were supposed to

fall off: become detached

fall out: (1) be separated from sb's body (e.g. hair, a tooth)
(2) have an argument with sb

fill in: complete

find out: learn sth you didn't know, usually through deliberate effort

- When I went to the bank to ask for a loan, I had to fill in hundreds of forms.
- Oh no! The sign has fallen off the wall.
- I was sick last week and as a result I have fallen behind in my work.
- Did you find out who sent you the package?
- John and Mary used to fall out a lot and they eventually split up.

B Complete using prepositions.

- Jenny reminds me of that famous actress we saw on television last night.
- We have a preference for dry wine.
- There must be a solution to Jim's problem.
- The rock band has just arrived at the airport.
- Did you get an invitation to/for the wedding?
- I prefer coffee to tea.
- Do you think mum will mind if I lend her book to Kathy?
- We must decide on where to go for the long weekend.
- Paul spends a lot of time on computer games.
- Unfortunately, I'm working on Saturday, so you can forget about going to the beach.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WE ARE THE CHAMPIONS!

The exciting game between the Dragons and the Tigers is over. The Tigers' failure to win of course means that they won't play in the finals. The Dragons played a wonderful game and earned everyone's admiration. Their combination of tactics and strength definitely helped them win. Due to the continuous development of new strategies by their coach, this will be the fifth year in a row that the Dragons will play in the final. Their popularity has increased over the years and there is no doubt that Hillbell Stadium will be crowded with enthusiastic fans on the day of the final. If they play like today, they are sure to be successful.

EXCITE

WONDER, ADMIRE

COMBINE

DEVELOP

FIVE

POPULAR

CROWD, ENTHUSE

SUCCESS

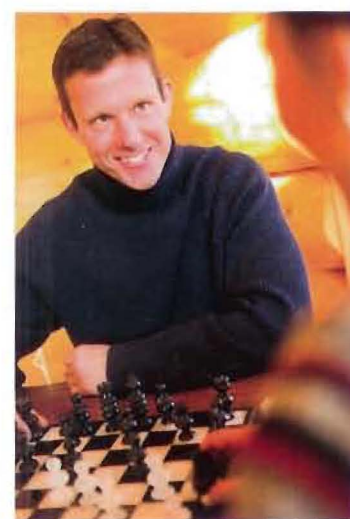
D Complete using the words given.

game (n): a pastime or amusement; a contest based on rules, whose result is determined by skill, knowledge, strength or chance

match (n): an organised game of football, cricket or other sport

play (n): a piece of work written for the theatre (to be performed on stage)

1. Shakespeare is very famous for the many plays he wrote.
2. I beat Tom at a game of chess.
3. The football cup final was the most exciting match of the season.



beat (v): defeat sb in a competition or election

win (v): achieve first place and gain a prize in a competition

4. I hope to win the championship.
5. The opposition party beat the party in office in the elections on Sunday.

earn (v): receive money as payment for your work

gain (v): acquire sth (gradually)

6. I earn a good salary which allows me to live comfortably.
7. The supermarket chain gave out free gifts to gain more popularity.

match (v): (1) be in harmony with sth
(2) have a pleasing appearance when used together

8. These shoes don't fit me, I need a size bigger.
9. Fashionable women usually buy handbags to match their shoes.

suit (v): (1) be convenient for sb or the best choice in a particular situation

10. Buy the white blouse. The colour really suits you.

fit (v): (2) make sb look attractive
be of the correct size or shape

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Jim _____ be watching TV. I just saw him outside.
a. mustn't b. shouldn't **c. can't** d. might not
2. We are really looking forward _____ the competition.
a. entering b. to enter c. enter **d. to entering**
3. Playing ball in the classroom was a bad idea, boys. You could _____ a window.
a. broke b. have been breaking c. be breaking **d. have broken**
4. The girl admitted _____ to her teacher.
a. to lie b. be lying **c. having lied** d. to have lied
5. Do we _____ attend the dance?
a. ought to b. have got to c. must **d. have to**
6. The robber was made _____ where he had hidden the money.
a. to confess b. confess c. confessing d. to confessing
7. Mike, _____ we borrow your CD player? We're having a party tonight.
a. would b. will **c. could** d. must
8. I have forgotten _____ this machine. Can you show me how?
a. how to operate b. to operate c. operating d. how operates
9. It's difficult for me _____ whether I should accept the job offer or not.
a. decide b. deciding c. to deciding **d. to decide**
10. We saw the girls _____ football as we drove past the field.
a. play b. to playing c. to play **d. playing**
11. I don't think the company can afford _____ any new staff this year.
a. to employ b. to employing c. to have employed d. be employing
12. Don't you know that you _____ put that watch in water? It's not waterproof.
a. don't have to b. needn't c. didn't need to **d. mustn't**
13. _____ you tell me how much this costs?
a. May **b. Would** c. Might d. Had better
14. "What would you like to do tonight?"
"We _____ go and watch a film."
a. could b. would c. need d. have to
15. I think you _____ consider buying the house.
a. can b. need c. shall **d. should**

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It was wrong of you to cheat in the exam.
ought You _____ **ought not to have cheated** _____ in the exam.
2. Hearing that an earthquake had occurred was a great shock to us.
shocked We _____ **were shocked to hear** _____ that an earthquake had occurred.
3. Steve doesn't mind travelling by bus.
used Steve _____ **is used to travelling** _____ by bus.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. Please send your application to 22 Market St.
2. You'd be impatient too if you had been waiting for two hours!
3. This outfit is (un)suitable for the dance, don't you think?
4. The employees at Maxwell's are all trained in customer service.
5. The children's excitement was obvious at the birthday party.
6. The film is a bit depressing as it deals with the reality of homeless people.
7. He works with great enthusiasm.
8. I can't find the solution to the last maths problem.

APPLY
PATIENT
SUIT
EMPLOY
EXCITE
REAL
ENTHUSE
SOLVE

C Complete using the -ing form or the infinitive of the verbs in brackets.**Next stop Mars. . .**

Travelling (travel) to Mars might become (become) a reality sooner than you think. Scientists are planning to send (send) astronauts to explore (explore) Mars in the near future. The surprising thing is that they are not planning to send (send) animals first, but insist on sending (send) people, even though it may be (be) risky. That's because scientists believe that it's the only way to find out (find out) if there is or ever has been life on the planet and if there could ever be (be). "We are in favour of exploring (explore) the possibility of being (be) able to live there. There's no point in beginning (begin) this expedition with animals, is there?" asks Professor Huxley. Other experts in the field object to sending (send) people up there so soon in the experiment. "We need to study (study) the planet as much as we can before we start doing/to do (do) anything. It's no good risking (risk) our astronauts' lives and spending (spend) millions of dollars until we are absolutely sure."

A/An

The indefinite article **a/an** is used before singular countable nouns or adjectives followed by singular nouns.

a + consonant sounds

a ruler, a **E**uropean country, a **u**niversity,
a one-way ticket, a **h**ospital, a **b**lue overcoat

an + vowel sounds

an apple, an **e**gg, an **u**mbrella, an **o**range,
an **h**our, an **e**xciting holiday

note

- Uncountable or plural countable nouns take **some / any**, etc.
I've bought some magazines. We haven't got any more ice cream.
- A/an is not used before uncountable nouns, except in certain expressions:
It is (such) a pity / shame! A good knowledge of French is required for this job.
What a relief! She has a love for / a hatred of / fear of dogs.
- **A/an - one:** *She has got a car. (We do not specify what kind of car.)*
They have got one car. (= only one, not more)

Use

The indefinite article is used:

- before a noun which is mentioned for the first time and represents no particular person or thing.
- before a noun which represents a group of people, animals or things.
We can also use **the** or the plural form.
- when talking about someone's character, job or nationality.
- in certain numerical expressions:
a couple / dozen a thousand / million
a half / quarter a great deal of
a lot of a great many
- to talk about: price per weight or item
distance per amount of fuel or speed
frequency per time
certain illnesses
- before *Mr/Mrs/Miss/Ms + surname* when we refer to someone unknown.

Examples

- They live in a flat.*
Take a break.
- A car is faster than a bike.*
The dolphin is an intelligent animal.
Children need love and affection.
- He is a pessimist.*
Her husband is an accountant.
*Howard is an Englishman. **But:** Claire is French.*
- We need a hundred copies.*
A great many teenagers listen to music while doing their homework.
They walked a quarter of a mile.
- This brandy costs £25 a bottle.*
My car does 50 miles a gallon/130 kilometres an hour.
They go to the cinema twice a month.
He has a fever / a cold / a toothache.
- A Mrs Jones wants to see you.*

The

The definite article **the** is used before countable and uncountable nouns of all genders both in the singular and the plural.

The definite article is used:

- before countable and uncountable nouns which are specific or have been mentioned before.
I'll see the doctor tomorrow.
The postman brought three letters and a parcel; the parcel was for Mary.

The definite article is NOT used:

- before countable and uncountable nouns which refer to something general or have not been mentioned before.
He likes coffee.
Experience is important for this job.
Whales are mammals.

2. before **unique nouns**.
the Earth, the sky, the Pyramids
3. before **names of seas, oceans, rivers, channels/ canals, coasts, deserts, countries or regions** (plural), **groups of islands, mountain ranges**:
The Mediterranean, the Pacific, the Mississippi, the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the Blue Coast, the Kalahari Desert, the Netherlands, the Highlands, the Bahamas, the Andes
4. with **buildings: cinemas, theatres, museums, galleries, pubs, restaurants, hotels, institutions**:
the Odeon cinema, the Royal Theatre, the British Museum, the National Gallery, the Black Buoy, the Pasta House, the Hilton, the British Council
5. with **newspapers, ships, services, organisations**:
the Guardian, the Queen Mary, the police, the United Nations
6. with **names of families and nationalities** (when we refer to the whole family or nation):
the Simpsons, the Dutch, the Japanese
The is optional with nationalities ending in -s
(the) Greeks, (the) Australians, etc.
7. before **musical instruments, dances, inventions** and the word **radio**:
Pedro plays the guitar and Rosa dances the flamenco.
When was the telephone invented?
We heard the news on the radio.
But: *I saw that film on TV last week.*
8. with the **superlative degree** of adjectives and adverbs.
He is the best student in his class.
Most does not take **the** when it is a determiner:
Most students passed the exam.
9. with **adjectives referring to classes of people**:
the old, the blind, the poor, the educated, etc.
10. with **only, same** and **ordinal numbers + nouns**
This is the only pen I've got.
Dogs are not all the same.
Who was the first astronaut to walk on the Moon?
11. before **noun + of + noun**:
the gulf of Mexico, the Statue of Liberty
12. with **titles** (not accompanied by proper names):
the King, the Queen, the Prince of Wales
But: *Queen Beatrix of Holland, Princess Margaret*
13. with **historical events or references**:
the Greek Revolution, the American Civil War
But: *World War II.*
14. with the **North, the South, the East, the West**:
Last year we visited the South of France.
2. before **names of people, streets, cities, islands, countries, continents, mountains** (singular), **religious holidays, days of the week, months**:
Maggie Smith, Oxford Street, Berlin, Ibiza, Italy, Asia, Mont Blanc, Christmas, Friday, August
But: *the High Street, the Hague, the Vatican*
The is optional before the names of seasons when the meaning is general:
Where do you usually go in (the) summer?
The is used when we talk about a specific season.
Do you remember the winter of 1987?
3. before **names of squares, parks, lakes, stations**
Euston Square, Holland Park, Lake Ontario, Liverpool Street station
4. with **pubs, restaurants, hotels, shops, banks, etc.** whose names include the name of their founder or another proper name (e.g. a place)
Jimmy's bar, Luigi's Restaurant, Emily's Hotel, Harrods, Lloyds Bank, Gatwick Airport
5. before names of **magazines, sports, games, colours, school subjects and languages**:
Newsweek (but: The Economist), tennis, chess, white, geography, Greek
German is a difficult language.
But: *The German language is difficult to learn.*
6. before names of **airlines or companies**:
Air France, Interamerican, BMW, etc.
7. with **meals** (breakfast, lunch, dinner, snack):
What did you have for breakfast?
But: When we talk about a specific meal, we use **the**:
I didn't enjoy the dinner on the plane.
8. before the words **bed, court, church, home, hospital, prison, school, university, work** when they are used for the purpose for which they exist:
Thomas went to university to study engineering.
But: *Patrick went to the university to visit his professor.*
9. before the words **father, mother, mum, dad** (when we refer to our own parents).
Father / Daddy taught me how to drive.
10. before means of **transport**.
I travel by car / by bus / by train / by air.
Also: *on foot, on horseback*
But: *He was in the car / on the bus when I saw him.*
11. with **north, south, east, west** when they are used as adverbs.
They are heading west.
12. with some **diseases** (cancer, malaria, etc.)
You should be vaccinated against malaria if you want to travel to the tropics.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using *a, an, the* or *-*.

Not just a cup of - tea

- - tea is an evergreen plant. It was accidentally discovered by the Emperor - Shen Nung of - China. Whilst on a trip, he was boiling a pot of water when a tea leaf fell into it.
- - British sailors, returning from the Far East, brought packets of - tea back - home as presents for their relatives.
- The first advertisement for - tea appeared in a newspaper called Mercurius Politicus in 1660. The advertisement in the newspaper said that - tea could cure - colds and other illnesses.
- The poor were prepared to pay as much as a third of their weekly wage to have - tea.
- - tea has been the most popular drink in - Britain for three hundred years. The/An average Briton drinks thirty cups of - tea a week. In fact, the British import almost twenty-five percent of all -/the tea exported in the world.



B Complete using *a, an, the* or *-*.

1. - Jim plays the guitar in - St Mark's Square every day.
2. Unfortunately, there are a lot of accidents on the motorway between - Athens and - Salonica.
3. - Hyde Park is the biggest park in - London.
4. - malaria is a disease carried by - mosquitoes.
5. Every year - swimmers attempt to swim across the English Channel.
6. - Ibiza is an island off the coast of - Spain and is part of the Balearic islands.
7. It has been a long time since I last spoke - Russian.
8. - Europe is the smallest continent on Earth, yet it is the most heavily populated.
9. - most flowers bloom in the/- spring.
10. Every year - millions of people visit the Statue of Liberty.
11. The colours of the Greek flag are - blue and - white.
12. In 1995, the United Nations celebrated their fiftieth anniversary.
13. - father is taking us to a nice restaurant called - Wheeler's on - Sunday for - dinner.
14. - Sophia is a mechanical engineer but she also writes for the Herald.
15. Head - east for about an hour and you'll find the Palace Hotel on the right hand side of the motorway.

6. You shouldn't fight _____ your brothers and sisters.
a. about **(b)** with c. on
7. The lifeguard saved the woman _____ drowning.
a. after b. since **(c)** from
8. The search _____ the lost boy lasted thirty-six hours.
a. about b. with **(c)** for
9. You shouldn't have lied _____ your friends about that.
(a) to b. about c. with
10. The wedding will take place _____ a Wednesday.
a. in **(b)** on c. by

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

THE ART OF ACTING

My decision to become an actor/actress was not an easy one. After all, one's ability to act well isn't enough. It isn't a stable profession. However, I find acting most enjoyable and am willing to live without job security.

I don't work on TV serials or anything like that. I only take part in theatre performances. It's most rewarding as you get the audience's immediate reaction. For example, when doing a humorous play, we all wait to hear the audience's laughter. If we don't, we know that the production has been unsuccessful and we have failed. Even though I've had many years of experience, I'm always terrified and nervous before going on stage. But once I start performing, I quickly lose myself in the play. Playing a character completely different from your own is always a challenge.

ACT

ENJOY, SECURE

PERFORM

REACT

HUMOUR, LAUGH

SUCCESS

TERROR

NERVE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

- miss** (v): (1) not attend or take part in sth because you are unable to, don't want to or have forgotten to (2) arrive too late to catch a bus/train/plane, etc.
- lose** (v): (1) not know where sth is because you have forgotten where you put it (2) to have been deprived of sth
- loose** (adj): not tight

- lack** (n): when sth is insufficient or does not exist at all
- shortage** (n): deficiency, not having enough of sth

- reduce** (v): make smaller in quantity or size
- decrease** (v): become smaller in quantity or size
- divide** (v): separate sth into smaller equal parts

- lie** (v): (1) (lie-lay-lain) be in a horizontal position; not standing or sitting (2) (lie-lied-lied) not to tell the truth
- lay** (v): (lay-laid-laid) place sth somewhere

1. I've lost weight and this skirt is too loose for me to wear.
2. You won't believe what happened. I missed the plane!
3. Karen has lost her passport and can't leave the country until she finds it.
4. There has been a shortage of water this summer and as a result, we aren't allowed to water our gardens.
5. A lack of calcium in his diet didn't allow him to develop strong bones.
6. The teacher divided the students into four groups.
7. During the summer sales, many shops reduce their prices by up to 60%.
8. The national debt has decreased by one percent this year.
9. Craig is lying down because he's not feeling very well.
10. I suggest you lay the blanket on the ground before we sit down and have our picnic.
11. How can I trust you? You've lied to me so many times.

unit | 10 | Nouns

A. Countable Nouns

Countable nouns can be counted and have singular and plural forms. They are defined by **a/an, one** in the singular and **some, any, (a) few**, etc. in the plural.

Plural Formation

Regular nouns

- Most nouns take **-s**:
car-cars
- Nouns ending in **-ch, -sh, -x, -s, -ss** take **-es**:
church-churches, fox-foxes, bus-buses
- Nouns ending in **-f** or **-fe** form their plural in **-ves**:
wolf-wolves, life-lives
But: some nouns just take **-s** and some others form their plural in both ways:
belief - beliefs, roof - roofs, safe - safes, scarf - scarfs/scarves
- Nouns ending in **-o**, normally take **-es**:
tomato-tomatoes
But: nouns ending in **vowel + -o** (e.g. radio), musical instruments (e.g. piano) and abbreviations (e.g. photo), take **-s**:
radio-radios, piano-pianos, photo-photos
- Nouns ending in **-y**, drop the **-y** and take **-ies**:
library-libraries
But: nouns ending in **vowel + -y**, take **-s**:
boy-boys, tray-trays

Irregular nouns

- Some nouns change completely in the plural:
man - men goose - geese
woman - women mouse - mice
child - children louse - lice
foot - feet ox - oxen
tooth - teeth
- Certain nouns are always in the plural form. These are:
 - arms (=weapons), clothes, contents, customs, goods, people, police, scales, stairs, surroundings (=environment)*
 - all nouns that consist of two parts: *binoculars, glasses, jeans, pliers, pyjamas, scissors, shorts, tights, trousers, etc.*
 With these nouns we often use **a pair of**.
- Some nouns of Greek or Latin origin form their plural by adding Greek or Latin suffixes:
analysis - analyses criterion - criteria
basis - bases phenomenon - phenomena
crisis - crises medium - media
- Some nouns are the same in the singular and the plural form:
deer - deer species - species
sheep - sheep series - series
fish - fish aircraft - aircraft
salmon - salmon means - means
trout - trout crossroads - crossroads
- Collective nouns describe groups of people: *audience, class, committee, crew, family, government, jury, staff*, etc. These nouns take a plural verb if they refer to the members of the group individually, and a singular verb if the group is considered as a unit.
My family are organising a trip to Italy.
(The family is seen as a group of individuals.)
The government is thinking of increasing taxes.
(The government is seen as one unit.)
- Nouns preceded by cardinal numbers and used before other nouns are always in the singular form:
a ten-pound note (not a ten-pounds note)
a three-year-old boy

note

Some nouns have different forms for the masculine and the feminine gender:

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| husband → wife | nephew → niece | waiter → waitress | prince → princess |
| father → mother | boy → girl | steward → stewardess | duke → duchess |
| son → daughter | (bride)groom → bride | actor → actress | |
| brother → sister | widower → widow | hero → heroine | |
| uncle → aunt | host → hostess | king → queen | |

B. Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns cannot be counted and have no plural form. **Some, any, (a) little**, etc. can be used with most of them, but not *a/an/one*.

Food	meat, cheese, bread, butter, fruit, fish, etc.	Diseases	measles, chickenpox, cancer, etc.
Liquids	milk, water, wine, beer, coffee, tea, etc.	Sciences and School Subjects	Mathematics, Physics, Chemistry, Economics, Literature, etc.
Material	glass, wood, iron, paper, steel, gold, etc.	Games	baseball, chess, billiards, darts, football, golf, soccer, poker, tennis, etc.
Natural Phenomena	weather, heat, snow, lightning, wind, rain, thunder, etc.	Abstract nouns	beauty, freedom, love, honesty, justice, business, work, time, information, news, knowledge, accommodation, etc.
Languages	English, French, Greek, Japanese, Italian, etc.	Some Concrete Nouns	baggage, furniture, money, luggage, traffic, business, etc.

note

- The quantity of uncountable nouns is defined by other words that we can put in front of them:

a cup of coffee/tea

a bottle of wine/beer

a glass of water/orange juice

a pint of beer

a jar of jam

a piece of cake/advice/

information/news

a piece/sheet of paper

a packet of tea/flour

a carton of milk

a slice/loaf of bread

a lump of sugar

an ice cube/a sugar cube

a pot of yoghurt

a bar of chocolate/soap

a can of soda

a block of wood/ice

a tube of toothpaste

a flash/bolt of lightning

a clap/peal of thunder

- Some nouns can be either countable or uncountable, but with different meanings:

Uncountable

There's a lot of **light** in this room.

This bottle is made of **glass**.

She brushes her **hair** every morning.

This table is made of pine **wood**.

She loves walking in the **rain**.

I've still got some **work** to do.

Experience is important for this job.

Countable

Please, turn on the **lights**.

He can't see without his **glasses**.

He found two **hairs** in his soup.

We saw a fox in the **woods**.

How often do the **rains** come in Thailand?

The motorway is closed due to road **works**.

We had some fascinating **experiences** when we visited Japan.

C. Compound Nouns

Compound Nouns consist of two parts. Be careful with their plural!

Types of Compound Nouns

Noun + noun <i>reception hall</i> → <i>reception halls</i> But: <i>woman driver</i> → <i>women drivers</i>	-ing + noun <i>dining room</i> → <i>dining rooms</i>	Adjective + noun <i>greenhouse</i> → <i>greenhouses</i>
Noun + preposition + noun <i>sister-in-law</i> → <i>sisters-in-law</i>	Noun + preposition <i>passer-by</i> → <i>passers-by</i>	No noun (e.g. verb + preposition) <i>a take-off</i> → <i>take-offs</i>

Grammar Practice

A Put the words in brackets into the plural form where necessary.

- Appliances Plus sells many different brands of tape recorders (tape recorder).
- Tea (tea), which is made from the dried leaves (leaf) of a small bush, was discovered five thousand years ago.
- Margaret and Don have two three-year-old (three-year-old) daughters (daughter). They are twins (twin)!
- Jack:** I can't see a thing.
Brian: Do you want your glasses (glass)?
Jack: No. It's the dim light (light) that is making it difficult to see.
- The first three runners-up (runner-up) will each receive a medal.
- The attic is full of mice (mouse).
- The Italian and French dictionaries (dictionary) are on the top shelf.
- He met all the criteria (criterion) for the job but wasn't hired because he was late for the interview.
- We are waiting for all the staff (staff) to arrive before beginning the meeting.
- That booklet has all the information (information) you'll need.

B Choose the correct answers.

- I'm really thirsty. Could you get me a _____ of water?
a. glass b. jar c. can
- Could I have a _____ of cheese, please?
a. bar b. slice c. sheet
- I made a mistake. Could you get me a clean _____ of paper?
a. block b. packet c. sheet
- Mum, where's the _____ of marmalade?
a. tube b. jar c. cup
- A sudden _____ of lightning lit the sky up for a second.
a. flash b. clap c. block
- This is a _____ of my favourite soap. I love the way it smells.
a. lump b. packet c. bar
- Can I have two _____ of sugar in my tea, please?
a. lumps b. pieces c. pints

C Complete using a, an, some, any or -.

- I teach _____ History and _____ Spanish.
- I'm really thirsty. Do you have _____ beer? Otherwise _____ water is fine.
- _____ An igloo is made from _____ ice.
- I'd like _____ tomatoes, _____ lettuce and _____ oranges, please.
- _____ cancer is _____ a disease which a lot of people die of.
- Have _____ some food. You must be starving after playing _____ football all day.
- We decided to replace the balcony door with _____ a sliding glass door because we wanted more _____ light in the living room.

8. There isn't any paper left in the machine so I can't make any photocopies.
9. Jane would like some time off — work. She needs a holiday.
10. Brian had an unexpected phone call from World Travel this morning. They told him that he had won a trip to Hawaii, including free — accommodation.

D Circle the correct answers. In some cases, both answers may be correct.

1. The crew is / are getting the ship ready to sail.
2. Snow cover / covers the whole valley in winter.
3. Scales measure / measures weight.
4. Salmon spend / spends the first part of their life in a river.
5. The medium which is / are used mostly for advertising is / are television.
6. News travel / travels fast nowadays.
7. The firewood you bought burn / burns well.
8. The cheese on the table is / are very tasty. Try it.
9. This series of books contain / contains medical information.
10. The staff is / are attending the Christmas dinner tonight.



E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. They went on holiday to Tunisia for two weeks.
week They went on a two-week holiday to Tunisia.
2. My glasses need changing, Mum.
pair I need a new pair of glasses, Mum.
3. How many suitcases do you have?
much How much luggage do you have?
4. He has travelled a lot by air, but he still gets nervous when the aircraft takes off.
make Although he has travelled a lot by air, take-offs still make him nervous.
5. Paul likes playing darts more than any other game.
favourite Darts is Paul's favourite game.
6. It didn't rain a lot last year.
had We had (very) little rain last year.
7. I'll give you some advice, Mary.
of I'll give you a piece of advice, Mary.
8. She doesn't know a lot about astronomy.
knowledge Her knowledge of astronomy is very poor.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

hand in:	give sth (a document, homework, a notice of resignation, etc.) to sb in charge or of authority
hand out:	distribute sth to several people
hang about:	spend time at a place not doing anything important
hang on:	wait for a short time
hang up:	end a phone call and put down the receiver

1. A lot of my friends hang out at the local cafe.
2. The teacher handed out the test papers to all the students.
3. When she had finished the call, she hung up and went into the kitchen to tell her husband the news.
4. All the students had to hand in their essays by Friday.
5. Could you hang on a minute while I finish with this customer?

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in addition (to):	besides, as well as, also
in advance:	beforehand, before doing sth
in bed:	(still) sleeping or not having got up yet
in the beginning:	initially, at first
in case of:	as a precaution against
in cash:	in notes and/or coins
in charge of:	responsible for sth

1. We've given some money in advance and we'll pay the rest when we get the car.
2. Scott is a foreman and is in charge of many workers.
3. Victoria doesn't feel well. She's been in bed nearly all morning.
4. The price includes the flight and hotel accommodation. In addition, you'll be provided with a rental car.
5. Will you pay for the items in cash or by credit card?
6. You must have a first-aid kit in your car in case of an emergency.
7. The children were excited about the trip in the beginning, but now they've lost interest.

C Complete using the correct form of the words given.

reveal (v):	uncover or expose sth hidden, make it known to people
confess (v):	admit that you have done sth wrong or shameful
admit (v):	acknowledge that sth is true

agree (v):	have the same opinion as sb else about sth
accept (v):	say "yes" to sth or agree to take sth

prevent (v):	(1) make sure that sth will not happen (2) make it impossible for sb to do sth
avoid (v):	take action so as not to do sth unpleasant

1. The criminal finally confessed after forty-eight hours of questioning.
2. Will you admit that what you did was wrong?
3. Statistics revealed that people are recycling rubbish more than they did in the past.
4. I don't agree with the new policy the committee has introduced.
5. We accepted Jane's invitation. She always gives wonderful parties.
6. I avoid walking down dark streets at night.
7. Wearing a seat belt could prevent you from getting hurt in an accident.

A. Adjectives

- Adjectives are placed before nouns to describe them.
- They have the same form in the singular and the plural.
- They can follow expressions of measurement.
- Adjectives may appear after linking verbs (**appear, be, become, come, get, go, grow, keep, prove, remain, seem, stay, turn, etc.**).

After the verbs **feel, look, smell, sound, taste**, we use adjectives, not adverbs.

Adjectives beginning with **a-** (afraid, alive, alone, awake, etc.), **ill** and **glad** appear only after linking verbs.

He is a famous author; everybody knows his novels.
They live in a large house near the beach.
This neighbourhood is full of large houses.
The river is 50 metres wide.
John is lucky to have a friend like you.

This soup tastes good.
This music sounds awful.
She's been awake since six o'clock.
She fell seriously ill last year.
I'm sure he'll be glad to meet you.

note

- We use adjectives such as **young, old, blind, deaf, poor, rich, unemployed, illiterate**, etc. with the definite article **the** to describe groups of people in terms of age or status. In this case, the adjectives are **not followed by nouns** and the verb of the sentence is usually in the **plural**.
- We can also use as adjectives:
 - ▶ nouns followed by other nouns describing material and purpose.
*Amy got a **gold** bracelet as a birthday present.*
 - ▶ nouns preceded by cardinal numbers.
*My house is only a **ten-minute** walk from here.*
 - ▶ present and past participles.
*She heard a **frightening** noise.*
*He won a **well-deserved** gold medal.*

Order of adjectives

NUMBER	OPINION	FACT							NOUN
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Purpose	
Three	practical	small	new	rectangular	yellow	Korean	plastic	lunch	boxes

B. Adverbs

Adverbs describe

- **verbs**, e.g. *Read the instructions carefully.*
- **adjectives**, e.g. *I'm awfully sorry about what happened.*
- **other adverbs**, e.g. *He speaks very quickly.*
- **whole sentences**, e.g. *Apparently, he has forgotten our appointment.*

C. Comparisons

Formation of comparisons (Adjectives and Adverbs)

	Positive	Comparative	Superlative	Be careful with:
one-syllable adjectives and adverbs	short fast shy	short-er fast-er shy-er	the short-est the fast-est the shy-est	hot - hotter - the hottest simple - simpler - the simplest dry - drier - the driest
two-syllable adjectives and adverbs ending in -y	funny early	funnier earlier	the funniest the earliest	
adjectives and adverbs with more than one syllable	modern often	more modern more often	the most modern the most often	quiet - quieter - the quietest or quiet - more quiet - the most quiet But: recent - more recent - the most recent

Irregular Forms

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good/well	better	best
bad/badly	worse	worst
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
far	farther/further	farthest/furthest
much/many	more	most
little	less	least

note

Comparative + than

Mary is taller than Anne.

The + superlative +

of all / period of time
in + place / group of people

Nick is the best student of all / in his class.

Rudolf Nurejev was among the most important dancers of the 20th century.

Elder/Eldest describe family relations. Elder is not followed by **than**.

My elder brother is studying in England.

My brother is older than me (not elder than me).

Farther/Farthest are used only for distance.

Further/Furthest are used for distance but they also mean more/most.

Today we walked farther/further than we did yesterday.

There are no further details available yet.

When we compare two people or things, we can use **the + comparative** (not *the + superlative*).
Sam is the taller of the two brothers.

- We can emphasise the meaning of adjectives and adverbs by adding:
 - ▶ **very, pretty, most, rather, quite, fairly** in the positive degree.
He was most annoyed by the flight delay.
 - ▶ **a bit, a lot, even, far, much, rather** in the comparative degree.
She is far more attractive than her sister.

Types of Comparisons

Type	Use	Examples
as...as like the same as	Similarity	<i>I won't miss a film as interesting as that one.</i> <i>He must be sleeping like a log.</i> <i>This exercise is the same as the previous one.</i>
not so/as + ... + as not such a + ... + noun + as	Dissimilarity	<i>A bicycle is not so/as fast as a car.</i> <i>Tim is not such a fast runner as his brother.</i>
comparative/superlative twice/three times as...as	Superiority	<i>A car is faster than a bicycle.</i> <i>This is the slowest car I've ever driven.</i> <i>He works twice as hard as his son.</i>
less...than the least...	Inferiority	<i>Italian food is less spicy than Indian.</i> <i>This is the least interesting book I've ever read.</i>
the + comparative... the + comparative	Successive comparison, meaning that the second depends on the first.	<i>The sooner we arrive, the better.</i> <i>The more you study, the more you learn.</i>
comparative + comparative	Successive comparison, indicating a continual change.	<i>The ozone layer is getting thinner and thinner.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Put the words in brackets in the correct order.

- My father always uses _____ a big round aluminium frying _____ pan to fry fish in.
(a/an, aluminium, big, round, frying)
- Mr Brown found _____ three old French wine _____ bottles which are very valuable.
(French, old, wine, three)
- I got _____ a beautiful blue Italian silk _____ scarf for my birthday.
(a/an, Italian, silk, blue, beautiful)
- We have _____ an antique oval oak dining _____ table.
(a/an, oval, antique, dining, oak)
- That is _____ a strange triangular green glass _____ ashtray. Don't you think?
(a/an, strange, green, glass, triangular)

B Choose the correct answers.

Pre-school teaching is a lot (1) _____ than most other jobs. People think that looking after young children is (2) _____ than looking after (3) _____ children, but then again the job is not as (4) _____ as some might think. What makes it difficult is that the (5) _____ they are, the (6) _____ responsibility you have.

Small children can be (7) _____. They are (8) _____ worried than adults about saying "inappropriate" things. Also, they are three times (9) _____ energetic as adults. The (10) _____ moments in the classroom are when it's quiet. Of course, you always get some children who are (11) _____ and (12) _____ than others by nature.

I arrive at work (13) _____ than teachers who work with (14) _____ children. Sure it's not the (15) _____ job in the world nor the (16) _____ paid. In fact, I know I could work elsewhere for (17) _____ hours and get paid (18) _____ money.

However, I believe it's a (19) _____ rewarding job (20) _____ many others I can think of.

- a. more demanding b. demanding c. most demanding
- a. easiest b. more easier c. easier
- a. older b. elder c. oldest
- a. bad b. badly c. worse
- a. young b. younger c. youngest
- a. most b. much c. more
- a. funniest b. very funny c. much funny
- a. little b. less c. least
- a. so b. like c. as
- a. rarer b. rarely c. rarest
- a. shy b. shyer c. shyest
- a. more quiet b. quiet c. more quieter
- a. earliest b. earlier c. early
- a. old b. older c. oldest
- a. easier b. easy c. easiest
- a. good b. better c. best
- a. few b. fewer c. fewest
- a. more b. much c. most
- a. much b. most c. more
- a. of b. than c. from

C Circle the correct answers.

- The Johnsons bought a beautiful house at a **much** / **fairly** good price.
- I was able to finish reading the book **much** / **most** sooner than I thought since I had some free time.
- The baby's temperature must have risen. He feels **very** / **even** warmer than before.
- Ray's party is going to be **quite** / **fairly** an exciting event. He told me that it's going to cost him **very** / **far** more than last year's.
- This is a **rather** / **bit** good educational programme for children.
- I'm leaving for the USA **pretty** / **a lot** sooner than I had originally planned.
- It's **absolutely** / **very** marvellous that you could make it to the reunion.
- Margaret finds taking saunas **most** / **much** relaxing.
- I like the car but it's a **rather** / **bit** more expensive than I thought it would be.
- It must be **far** / **pretty** exciting travelling all over the world.

D Rewrite the sentences using the adverbs in brackets.

- Kim will go camping. (**in the spring/probably/there**)
Kim will probably go camping there in the spring.
- Steven knew nothing about the robbery that took place. (**absolutely/yesterday/apparently**)
Apparently, Steven knew absolutely nothing about the robbery that took place yesterday.
- That restaurant is expensive, so I won't come with you. (**definitely/rather/tonight**)
That restaurant is rather expensive, so I definitely won't come with you tonight.
- Young people find part-time work. (**nowadays/in the summer/often**)
Nowadays, young people often find part-time work in the summer.
- Peter has arrived but I'm sure he has forgotten about our meeting. (**completely/just/pretty**)
Peter has just arrived but I'm pretty sure he has completely forgotten about our meeting.

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- We can't afford such an expensive holiday.
as We can't afford _____ a holiday as expensive as _____ that.
- As we climbed higher, we had more difficulty breathing.
harder The _____ higher we climbed, the harder _____ it was to breathe.
- Jane gave us a warm welcome when we arrived.
friendly Jane welcomed _____ us in a friendly way/manner _____ when we arrived.
- The weather was getting worse by the minute, so we decided not to go out.
and The weather was getting _____ worse and worse _____, so we decided not to go out.
- Chris skates better than his sister Anne.
such Anne is not _____ such a good skater as _____ her brother Chris.
- The journey was less tiring than I thought it would be.
as The journey _____ was not as/so tiring as _____ I thought it would be.
- This is the worst book I have ever read.
than I have never read _____ a worse book than _____ this one.
- Danny's briefcase is similar to yours.
same Danny's briefcase is almost _____ the same as _____ yours.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

hold on:	wait for a short time
hold on to:	hold sth
hold up:	(1) delay sb or sth (2) rob
hurry up:	make haste, do sth quickly
keep back:	reserve sth, not reveal or give away all of it
keep off:	stay off sth
keep on:	continue doing sth
keep out (of):	stay outside a place, not enter
keep up (with):	maintain the same level or speed as sb else

1. Can't you read the sign? It says **keep off** the grass!
2. Craig **kept on** working despite being tired.
3. Could you **hold on** a minute while I phone Mr Bent?
4. No matter how hard I tried, I couldn't **keep up** with Samantha in the race.
5. Could you **hold on to** these bags while I buy some bread?
6. **Hurry up**! If we miss the bus, the next one isn't for an hour.
7. A masked man **held up** the National Bank this morning, but he was caught later in the day.
8. The police **kept back** information about the murders so as not to scare people.
9. Please, **keep** the dog **out** of the kitchen because I've just washed the floor.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in common:	sharing certain things or characteristics
in comparison with:	compared with
in conclusion:	lastly, finally
in control of:	having the power to manipulate sth or make decisions about it
in danger:	in a dangerous situation
in detail:	analytically, precisely
in the end:	finally, lastly
in fact:	actually, in reality
in fashion:	fashionable
in favour of:	supporting sth
in good/bad condition:	in good/bad shape
in sb's free time:	when sb is not busy

1. The president of the company is the man **in control of** everything. Nothing can be done without his approval.
2. **In conclusion**, I would like to thank you all for listening to me.
3. What do you do **in your free time**? Do you read books?
4. I agree with you. I am **in favour of** renovating the house.
5. The witness was asked to describe **in detail** the events which took place on 26 March.
6. **In comparison with** last year's records, it seems that our sales have increased.
7. These bright colours are **in fashion** this summer.
8. Even though we are brother and sister, we have nothing **in common**.
9. You should buy this second-hand car. It really is **in good condition**.
10. This painting looks like an original Monet, but **in fact** it is a copy.
11. We couldn't decide where to go for a holiday, so **in the end** we consulted our travel agent who suggested New Zealand.
12. If you continue spending money like this, you are **in danger** of losing your business.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WHAT'S ON THE TELLY TONIGHT?

After 1948, the Hollywood studios, where films for the cinema were produced, faced a new kind of competition. The arrival of television.

ARRIVE

At first, Hollywood didn't worry. After all, John Baird's invention could only produce small black and white pictures. However, they were mistaken.

INVENT

To the astonishment of the Hollywood studios, by the early 1950s weekly attendance at cinemas had dropped by fifty percent.

ASTONISH, WEEK

Television today has become part of everyday life. These boxes give endless hours of pleasure to millions of people. It is also an economical form of

END

entertainment. However, TV can also be harmful and not only for the eyes. For instance, programmes containing scenes of violence can influence children's

PLEASE, ECONOMY

behaviour negatively.

HARM

VIOLENT

BEHAVE

Who would have thought that television would influence our lives so much?

D Complete using the words given.

false (adj): (1) incorrect, untrue, mistaken (2) artificial, not real (e.g. false teeth)

artificial (adj): not natural (e.g. artificial flowers)

fake (adj): sth looking valuable or genuine in order to deceive people (e.g. a fur coat)

unreal (adj): (1) not real, imaginary (2) bizarre, so strange that you can't believe it is happening

untrue (adj): not true, not based on fact

different (from/to) (adj): not the same

imitation (n): a copy of sth, made to look as if it were genuine (e.g. imitation leather)

counterfeit (adj): (money, goods, documents, etc.) not genuine, but looking genuine in order to deceive people

authentic (adj): genuine

original (adj): the first and genuine form of sth (a document, a work of art, etc.), not a copy

- I avoid foods that have artificial additives.
- Call the police. These American dollars are counterfeit.
- It felt so unreal seeing all my high-school friends after 15 years!
- In the 1970s wearing false eyelashes was very fashionable.
- This is a very good imitation of the painting.
- That statement is untrue. I have papers to prove it.
- This architecture is different to anything I've ever seen before.
- This isn't a real diamond. It's a fake.
- Authentic Asian cuisine has some unusual herbs.
- You keep the original copy and I keep the photocopy.

12 Determiners

A. Some / Any / No / Every / Each

Some, any and **no** are used with countable (singular and plural) and uncountable nouns. **Each** and **every** are used only with singular countable nouns. The compounds of **some, any, no** and **every** are pronouns; no noun can be used with them.

	Use	Examples
some someone/somebody something somewhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in affirmative sentences in questions when a positive answer is expected in polite requests and offers 	<i>Someone took my keys by mistake.</i> <i>Are you looking for something?</i> <i>Would you like some cake?</i>
any anyone/anybody anything anywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in questions in affirmative sentences, meaning "no matter which" in negative sentences when not or other negative words (hardly, never, rarely, etc.) are included 	<i>Is anyone in the kitchen?</i> <i>You can visit us any day next week.</i> <i>I don't eat anything spicy.</i> <i>Hardly anyone has arrived yet.</i>
no no one/nobody nothing nowhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in negative sentences instead of not any; no other negative words can be used 	<i>He has nowhere to go.</i>
every everyone/everybody everything everywhere	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> when we consider people or things as a group with nearly and not <p>every one of + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Every car has a steering wheel.</i> <i>Nearly every house in this area has a garden.</i> <i>Not every room has a nice view.</i> <i>I found every one of these books interesting.</i>
each	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> when we consider people or things separately <p>each (one) of + plural noun/pronoun</p>	<i>Each student came up with a different idea.</i> <i>Each one of them received a free copy of the magazine.</i>

note

- **Some of** and **any of** go with a plural verb.
Do any of your friends speak Italian?
- The **compounds** of **some, any, no** and **every** go with a singular verb. **Else** can be used with them (meaning "more" or "different").
Someone else wants to speak to you.
- **Someone/somebody, anyone/anybody, no one/nobody** and **everyone/everybody** refer to both genders, so we use plural pronouns and possessive adjectives.
They didn't take any photos because no one had brought their camera with them.

B. Much / Many / A lot of / (A) little / (A) few

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns	Use	Examples
many	much	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mostly in questions and negations • in affirmative sentences with too, so, how and as • at the beginning of the sentence (in formal English) 	<i>Are there many homeless people in Athens?</i> <i>There is too much sugar in my coffee.</i> <i>Much money is spent on space exploration.</i>
a few	a little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • they show a small amount (positive meaning) and can be used with only. 	<i>She has lived in England for a few years.</i> <i>I've only got a little work to do.</i>
few	little	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • they show a very small amount (negative meaning) and can go with very, so, too, as and how. 	<i>There are very few pencils on the table (not enough for everyone).</i> <i>There's too little sugar in my coffee.</i>
Countable and uncountable nouns		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • in affirmative sentences before nouns and pronouns A lot, Lots and Plenty can also be used without nouns. 	
a lot (of)			<i>A lot of cars run on unleaded fuel.</i>
lots of			<i>We needn't buy any more bread; we've got plenty.</i>
plenty (of)			

C. Both / Either / Neither / Most / All / None / Whole

For two people or things

Determiner	Use	Examples
Both (of)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • It has a positive meaning and goes with a plural verb. • They state that something is true for two people or things. The verb of the sentence is always in the plural form. 	<i>Both my brothers are engineers.</i> <i>They both live in England.</i>
Both ... and		<i>Both of them saw the film.</i> <i>Both Tim and John like football.</i>
Either	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Either means "any one of the two". • Either of goes with a singular or plural verb. • They state that something is true for any one of two people, things, etc. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form. 	<i>Paris or London? Either city is beautiful.</i>
Either of		<i>Either of these cities is/are beautiful.</i>
Either ... or		<i>Either he was too busy or he didn't know about the party.</i>
Neither	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Neither means "not one and not the other". • Neither of goes with a singular (formal) or plural verb (informal). • They have a negative meaning and state that something is not true for either of the two people or things. The verb of the sentence is either in the singular or plural form. 	<i>Neither book was interesting.</i>
Neither of		<i>Neither of my parents works / work at weekends.</i>
Neither ... nor		<i>Neither Tim nor John like(s) football.</i>

For more than two people or things

Most	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • They have a positive meaning and go with a plural verb. All + that-clause + singular verb = The only thing... 	<i>Most young people like pop music.</i>
Most of		<i>Most of my friends live in Athens.</i>
All		<i>All of them enjoy picnics.</i>
All of		<i>All (that) he does is criticise me.</i>
None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • None has a negative meaning. It is not followed by a noun. • None of is used before nouns or object pronouns with a singular or plural verb. 	<i>Any questions? No, none.</i>
None of		<i>None of the students speaks/speak German.</i> <i>None of them wants/want to leave.</i>

note

Whole (=complete) goes between a determiner and a singular countable noun.
She spent the whole evening watching TV.

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

1. **Christopher:** Does **anyone** / **someone** need the car for the next hour? I need to go **anywhere** / **somewhere**.
Michael: No, I don't.
Darren: Neither do I. I've got **anywhere** / **nowhere** to go, so take it. But on your way back, could you get **each one of** / **everyone** us an ice cream?
2. **Louise:** You sit in the sun nearly **every** / **each** day. Aren't you worried about getting burnt?
Marion: Oh, I never stay in the sun for too long and I always put on **any** / **some** suntan lotion.
3. **Catherine:** I haven't had **anything** / **something** to eat today.
Alexander: I'm so hungry that I could eat **something** / **everything** on the table.
Catherine: We can eat as much as we like. **Every** / **Everyone** else has eaten.
4. **Receptionist:** Are you looking for **someone** / **no one**?
Woman: Yes, I am. Mrs Byrne.
Receptionist: Let's see...Oh yes, she's on the third floor, in room 309.
Woman: Could you also tell me what the morning visiting hours are?
Receptionist: You can visit patients in this hospital at **any** / **no** time as long as it's not after midnight!
5. **Salesperson:** **Each** / **Every** of these cars has air-conditioning.
Customer: Do all of them have airbags?
Salesperson: No, not **each** / **every** car has an airbag.

B Circle the correct answers.

- Many** / **Much** people showed up at the concert.
- Few** / **Little** people go mountaineering during the winter.
- There's very **little** / **a little** time left to get ready for the dance.
- You needn't apply any more suntan lotion; you've got **plenty of** / **plenty** on.
- There is **a lot of** / **a lot** traffic on the motorway.
- You didn't make **much** / **many** serious mistakes in the test, but you should be more careful with your spelling.
- We've only got **a little** / **a few** petrol left. We'd better stop at the next petrol station.
- We need to get **a few** / **few** stamps from the post office. I want to send off my Christmas cards.
- I couldn't find **many** / **much** information on ancient Greek art in my encyclopaedia. I'll go to the library.
- How **much** / **many** bread do you want me to buy?

C Complete using *both, either, neither, all, none or whole*.

- I can't wear either of these two jumpers. Both of them need washing.
- Some siamese twins have to spend their whole life joined together.
- You can eat either/both of these two small pies but leave the big one for John.
- I don't think the address I have is correct. I've sent him several letters but I've received none in return.
- All of the children in my class are starting to learn another language and they find it very enjoyable.

6. After she had talked to her two older sisters, she told both of them that she appreciated their advice but that she would do what she thought was right.
7. Neither of my parents can drive us to school because they're at work.
8. I had an awful Sunday. I spent the whole day cleaning.
9. Tanya, Robert, Craig and I are coming to visit you. Don't cook anything because we had a big lunch and none of us are hungry.
10. Sally has been sick all week. I hope she starts feeling better soon.

D Choose the correct answers. Sometimes both answers may be correct.

1. Both actors _____ Shakespeare beautifully.
 a. perform b. performs
2. Either dress _____ fine.
 a. is b. are
3. Everybody _____ wearing formal evening clothes.
 a. is b. are
4. Each room of the house _____ painted a different colour.
 a. were b. was
5. Neither of them _____ Spanish very well.
 a. speak b. speaks
6. Nobody _____ arrived, so we can't start the meeting yet.
 a. has b. have
7. All Derek does _____ complain.
 a. are b. is
8. None of us _____ a car, so let's rent one.
 a. has b. have

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. It's unbelievable, but not a single dress in that shop suited me.
none It's unbelievable, but none of the dresses in that shop suited me.
2. This restaurant doesn't have any English-speaking waiters.
no There are no English-speaking waiters in this restaurant.
3. She was doing her Christmas shopping all afternoon.
the She spent the whole afternoon doing her Christmas shopping.
4. I thought that both novels were boring at the beginning.
neither I thought that neither novel was interesting at the beginning.
5. Mark, the only thing you do is watch TV!
all Mark, all you do is watch TV!
6. There aren't a lot of things to do in a village.
much There isn't much to do in a village.
7. I always take my sunglasses with me wherever I go.
never I never go anywhere without my sunglasses.
8. Jim bought two books last week, but he hasn't started reading them yet.
of Jim hasn't started reading either of the books (that) he bought last week.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

knock down: (1) hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down
(2) pull down a building or part of it

knock out: make sb unconscious

knock over: hit sb (with a vehicle) and cause them to fall down

leave out: not include

let down: disappoint sb

lock out: prevent sb from entering by locking the doors

lock up: (1) place sth somewhere and fasten the lock
(2) make sure that all the doors and windows of a building or a car are locked

1. If you don't like garlic, leave it out of the recipe.
2. Don't forget to lock up when you leave the house.
3. My best friend has never let me down. She's always there for me when I need her.
4. I heard that the City Council has decided to knock down that old building and build a car park in its place.
5. The boxer knocked out his opponent in the second round.
6. The driver didn't see the man crossing the street and knocked him down/over.
7. I accidentally locked out the cat last night, so it slept on the front doormat.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

NOT FOR THE FAINT-HEARTED!

Sky-diving isn't something new, but courageous cameramen jumping out of planes with all the necessary equipment to film a sky-diver, is. The cameramen are not of course totally inexperienced, as they go through a training programme. After a lot of thought and careful planning this amazing idea was put into practice so that judges could observe the sky-divers' skilful manoeuvres from the ground. Then they judge them accordingly in competitions at a height of over 10 000 feet! The pictures are shown on huge screens on the ground for the judges. Crowds gather and look on with curiosity and amazement at seeing such a dangerous sport in action.

COURAGE

EQUIP

EXPERIENCE, TRAIN

THINK

SKILL

COMPETE, HIGH

CURIOUS, AMAZE

C Complete using the words given.

behaviour (n): social conduct, the way a person or an animal behaves

manner (n): the way sb does sth

manners (n): social conduct

habit (n): sth you do often or regularly

routine (n): the usual series of things sb does regularly at a particular time

1. He was impolite and had bad manners, as he spoke with his mouth full.
2. Clients trust Mrs Parker as she always deals with them in a very professional manner.
3. The dog's strange behaviour made us realise that something was wrong.
4. When I'm nervous, I am in the habit of biting my nails.
5. Part of our daily routine includes a jog before breakfast.

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- "Who is it?"
"_____ Jenny."
a. My b. I'm c. It's d. Mine
- You should hear Lucy play _____ guitar!
 a. the b. one c. some d. a
- There's _____ freshly squeezed orange juice in the fridge if you're thirsty.
a. a b. some c. one d. little
- _____ can come to the club. You don't need to be a member.
a. Someone b. Every c. Each one d. Anyone
- "Saturday or Sunday?"
"_____ day is fine. Come whenever you like."
a. Neither b. Either c. Both d. None
- They had _____ ashtrays on the table.
 a. two square glass b. square two glass c. glass square two d. two glass square
- My nephews speak French really _____.
a. good b. better c. well d. best
- Coffee is cheap at this supermarket but it costs even _____ at Save Supermarket.
a. least b. more little c. little d. less
- There is _____ food left but not enough for everyone.
a. little b. a little c. few d. a few
- I have never seen _____ tall building as that before.
a. a so b. a more c. such a d. a such
- Don't forget to buy a _____ of toothpaste for the trip.
a. can b. tube c. carton d. pint
- Neither Julie nor Sue _____ to work today because they are both ill.
a. goes b. isn't going c. aren't going d. is going
- If you require any _____, please contact my secretary.
 a. further information b. further informations c. farther information d. farther informations
- The _____ we work out, _____ we become.
a. most ... the fitter b. more ... the more fitter c. more ... the fitter d. more ... the fittest
- All he does is _____ all day long.
a. to sleep b. sleeping c. sleeps d. sleep

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- On Sunday nights, the roads into Athens are very busy.
traffic There _____ *is a lot of traffic* _____ on the roads into Athens on Sunday nights.
- None of these books are more informative than the encyclopaedia.
most The encyclopaedia _____ *is the most informative* _____ of all these books.
- The attic doesn't have any windows.
no There _____ *are no windows* _____ in the attic.

4. The mechanic made a careful inspection of the car to see what was wrong with it.
inspected The mechanic inspected the car carefully to see what was wrong with it.
5. I attended a course at Kent College for two months.
on I went on a two-month course at Kent College.
6. I can't live in such a small flat.
as I can't live in a flat as small as this.
7. In my opinion, both hotels are expensive, so let's find another one.
cheap In my opinion, neither hotel is cheap, so let's find another one.
8. I don't think that Japanese is easy to learn.
language I don't think that the Japanese language is easy to learn.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- the grass!
a. Go out **(b.)** Keep off c. Move out d. Pull over
- Please don't the phone on me again!
a. hand in b. hang out **(c.)** hang up d. hang on
- We didn't have to pay for the furniture in but on the day of delivery.
a. time **(b.)** advance c. cash d. future
- My children have excellent table .
(a.) manners b. manner c. behaviour d. habits
- You can't traffic in the city centre in the afternoon, so why don't you go in the morning?
a. prevent b. miss **(c.)** avoid d. lack
- flowers are usually made of plastic or silk.
(a.) Artificial b. Untrue c. False d. Unreal
- He never he is wrong.
(a.) admits b. reveals c. confesses d. agree
- I the concert because of the exams.
a. lost b. loss **(c.)** missed d. loose
- The teacher needs to the class into two to play the game.
a. decrease **(b.)** divide c. reduce d. shortage
- The government the name of the spy last night.
a. admitted b. agreed c. confessed **(d.)** revealed
- Jenny is Korean, so she cooks Korean food.
(a.) authentic b. imitation c. artificial d. original
- We decided to our old house and build a new one.
a. knock over **(b.)** knock down c. knock out d. let down
- That scarf really that dress! It's a perfect match.
a. goes up **(b.)** goes with c. goes over d. goes on
- Can you clean the kitchen to the bathroom?
a. in advance b. in case **(c.)** in addition d. in change
- The reception took place Saturday.
(a.) on b. in c. at d. by

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. We shouldn't hire such a young and inexperienced man for a job as difficult as this one. **EXPERIENCE**
2. It is said that electricity is the greatest invention. **INVENT**
3. Everybody liked the play and the critics said that it was definitely a success. **SUCCEED**
4. Entering the burning house to save the little boy was a very courageous thing to do. **COURAGE**
5. Despite their terrifying appearance, most dinosaurs were harmless vegetarians. **HARM**
6. We didn't find our trip unpleasant although it was raining. **PLEASE**
7. His reaction to the news was unpredictable. **REACT**
8. She looked at me in amazement. **AMAZE**

C Complete using only one word in each blank.



Roller-coasters have been around for over one hundred years and their popularity is constantly increasing.

Some people are crazy about roller-coasters and travel around (1) the world to try out new rides famous for their speed, length or height. They love the feeling of not being (2) in control, the speed and the "sickening" feeling in their stomach. Some roller-coasters are made of pine wood. These rides feel

- (3) less safe because the track shakes and makes (4) a lot of noise. As a result, the rides seem (5) more/rather very/extremely dangerous. However, they are just (6) as safe as steel frame ones. Besides, all roller-coasters are equipped with safety bars which people hold (7) on to and which can (8) prevent riders from falling off.

13 Pronouns - Possessives

A. Personal Pronouns

Personal Pronouns replace nouns and are used as subjects (**I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they**) or objects (**me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them**) of verbs. *John is my cousin. He lives next door. Have you seen him lately?*

Pronouns	Use	Examples
He/Him She/Her	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for people, babies and animals if we know their gender ▶ She/her can also be used for ships and countries. 	<i>Don't go near that dog; he could bite you.</i> <i>The large cruise ship looked impressive as she steamed out of the harbour.</i>
It	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for things, babies and animals (if the gender is unknown or unimportant) • in expressions of time, distance, weather and temperature • when we are asking or saying who a person is • at the beginning of a sentence, instead of a full infinitive or a that-clause • as the subject of the verbs appear, depend, happen, look, occur, seem, sound, etc. 	<i>It's a really cute baby.</i> <i>It's twelve o'clock.</i> <i>It was very cold last Christmas.</i> <i>Who is it? It's Mary.</i> <i>It is not wise to lend money to strangers.</i> <i>It seems that he is not enjoying the party.</i>

note

- **It takes + (object) + time expression + full infinitive**

It took an hour to drive to the airport.

- **Subject + take + time expression + full infinitive**

Anne will take at least two hours to iron these clothes.

- **There + be** is used for something we mention for the first time.
- **It + be/other verb** is used for something that has already been mentioned.

There was a letter for you this morning. It is on your desk.

B. Possessive Adjectives

Possessive Adjectives (**my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their**) are always used before a noun (without an article). They have the same number and gender as the owner. *my parents, her bicycle, their clothes*

note

- If we want to emphasise that something belongs to only one person, we use **my/your**, etc. + **own + noun**.

They have their own flat.

- **on my/your/his**, etc. **own** = alone, without help

Mary does her homework on her own.

C. Possessive Pronouns

Possessive Pronouns (**mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs**) replace **my/your**, etc. + **noun**. They are never followed by nouns. *Shall we take your car or mine?*

note

- **A/an + noun + of + mine/yours**, etc. = **one of + my/your**, etc. + **noun**

a friend of mine = one of my friends

Possessive case

Form	Use	Examples
's	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • singular nouns (people or animals) • someone/somebody, anyone, etc. • irregular plural nouns (not ending in -s) • compound nouns 	<i>Tim's computer, the dog's collar</i> <i>It's nobody's fault.</i> <i>the children's clothes</i> <i>my father-in-law's car</i>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> time expressions/idioms ▶ When two or more people own something in common, 's is added to the last noun. ▶ When two or more people own different things, 's is added to each noun. 	<p><i>today's weather, last Sunday's newspapers, for heaven's sake</i></p> <p><i>John and Mary's car.</i></p> <p><i>George's and Andrew's desks.</i></p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> regular plural nouns ▶ Nouns ending in -s in the singular (especially names) take both 's and '. 	<p><i>my parents' bedroom</i></p> <p><i>Chris's / Chris' shoes</i></p>
of + noun	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> things, abstract nouns, animals (sometimes) ▶ We can use of for people, only in long phrases. ▶ For places and organisations we can use of or 's. 	<p><i>the front seat of the car</i></p> <p><i>the price of success</i></p> <p><i>the eye of the tiger (=the tiger's eye)</i></p> <p><i>The son of the man who rents our flat is a doctor.</i></p> <p><i>the city's population / the population of the city</i></p> <p><i>the company's plans / the plans of the company</i></p>

D. Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns are: **myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.**

Use	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> with the verbs behave, cut, educate, enjoy, help, hurt, kill, like, teach, etc. if the subject and the object of the verb are the same after certain verbs with prepositions (talk to, say to, take care of, etc.) after the verbs look, seem, etc. to describe emotions or behaviour 	<p><i>He has taught himself how to play the guitar.</i></p> <p><i>He was sitting in the dark, talking to himself.</i></p> <p><i>You don't look yourself today; is there anything wrong?</i></p> <p><i>The President himself visited the hospital.</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> for emphasis (emphatic pronouns); they are placed after the subject or the object of the verb, or at the end of the sentence. <p>by + reflexive pronoun = alone, without help</p> <p>Reflexive pronouns are not normally used:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> with the verbs concentrate, relax, rest. with verbs describing actions that people usually do for themselves (wash, dress, shave, wake up, etc.). after prepositions of place. 	<p><i>The scouts built this boat by themselves.</i></p> <p><i>You have to concentrate more.</i></p> <p><i>She got up, washed her face and had breakfast.</i></p> <p><i>He was watching the woman in front of him.</i></p>

note

- Reflexive pronouns are used after certain verbs to form idioms:
 - enjoy yourself** = have a good time
 - behave yourself** = be good
 - help yourself to** (sth) = you are welcome to have an amount of sth
 - make yourself at home** = make yourself comfortable
 - make yourself heard/understood** = speak loudly/clearly
- Note the difference between **themselves** and **each other** = (one another), both referring to two people.
 - They were looking at themselves in the mirror.*
 - They were just sitting there, looking at each other.*

E. Other Pronouns

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One-Ones are used if we do not want to repeat a countable noun. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Would you like the green sweater or the blue one?</i> <i>Where are the glasses? I need some tall ones.</i> Question word + ever (whoever, whatever, wherever, whenever, however, whichever) = any person, thing, place, time, etc. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Wherever you hide, they will find you.</i> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Other means "more" or "different". <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ the other(s) = the rest ▶ others = more, apart from those already mentioned ▶ every other day/week, etc. = every second day/week, etc. ▶ the other day = a few days ago ▶ another = one more. It can also go with expressions of time, distance or money. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>I'd like another glass of orange juice.</i> <i>We must drive for another ten miles.</i>
---	--

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

Little White Lies

It / **There** is difficult to admit **itself** / **it**, but most of **our** / **us** tell lies now and again. There is the social lie, (*How nice to see **you** / **yourself**, ...oh and **me** / **I** love that new hairstyle of **yours** / **your** ...*), the white lie (*Sorry **I** / **my** can't come to **you** / **your** dinner party because **myself** / **I** am having guests **themselves** / **myself**...*) and the lie that makes life easier (***I** / **Me** have no idea how that report got on **mine** / **my** desk, sir*).

Most forms of lying are innocent and involve a harmless desire to make **us** / **our** lives easier. But **it** / **its** depends on how much **we** / **us** lie. Some people spend **them** / **their** whole life deceiving others.

Margaret, for example, is a compulsive liar. **It** / **She** has always enjoyed gossiping with **her** / **hers** friends about other people. **She** / **Herself** starts out with something which is true and comes out with a totally different story, using that great imagination of **herself** / **hers**. Margaret's need for attention drives **her** / **she** to lying.

But let's not kid **ourselves** / **us**. Lying is a really bad habit. **Yourselves** / **You** all know the story of the little boy who cried "Wolf!" too many times and then found **him** / **himself** being ignored when the wolf **itself** / **it** came.

B Complete using the words in brackets and the Possessive Case.

- Keeping the environment clean should be (the concern/everyone) everyone's concern.
- Both (the essays/Craig and John) Craig's and John's essays were detailed and very well-written.
- Baby kangaroos live in (the pouch/the mother) the mother's pouch/the pouch of the mother for about eight months.
- Those are (the children/our next door neighbour) the children of our next door neighbour/our next door neighbour's children.
- (the parents/the children) The children's parents are going to (the office/the principal) the principal's office.
- (the room/Christine and Michelle) Christine and Michelle's room needs painting.
- (the newspapers/last week) Last week's newspapers contained a lot of information about the Internet.
- (the cover/this book) The cover of this book is falling apart.

C Choose the correct answers. Sometimes both answers may be correct.

- Your cat is so tame and friendly. _____ is completely wild and won't let anyone come near her.
 - Us
 - b.** Ours
 - Our
- _____ I bumped into our old friend Margaret Stanton.
 - a.** The other day
 - Another day
 - Every other day
- Ann:** Are you going to wear the blue or the grey suit to the interview?

Tom: The _____.

 - a.** blue one
 - other blue
 - blue ones
- Mark:** Who's at the door, Julie?

Julie: _____ Jim.

 - He's
 - His
 - c.** It's
- I go to aerobic classes _____ day.
 - the other
 - b.** every other
 - another

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using prepositions.

1. My parents were disappointed in/with me when they saw the marks I got in the final exam.
2. Customers are not satisfied with this product. It causes allergic reactions.
3. Graham Bell is famous for inventing the telephone.
4. Simon complained to the manager about the poor service in the restaurant.
5. I'm tired of all the work I'm expected to do while others sit around doing nothing.
6. I was very impressed by/with the way things were run at that school.
7. I'm really bored with my routine. I should take up a new hobby.
8. Chocolate ice cream is popular with most children.
9. Christine was annoyed with me because I arrived late.
10. The President was upset by the violent demonstration held outside the Parliament.
11. I'm fed up with your excuses for not doing any work!
12. I disapprove of your staying out so late.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

A HANGOUT

During cold winter afternoons, I normally meet my friends at the local fast food restaurant. It's an ideal meeting place as there is lots of warmth. Tasty food (which my mum calls poisonous) is also available. So, it's a comfortable place to chat. Young people, like me, need a place to go and talk. We usually talk about our interests and hobbies, mine being photography. Our behaviour is typical of many teenagers, I suppose. However, my parents think I go out too often. Luckily, though, after many arguments they have begun to accept my explanation that young people need to find ways to relieve their boredom, especially if they live in a small town like I do.

NORMAL
IDEA, WARM
TASTE, POISON
COMFORT
PHOTO
ARGUE
EXPLAIN, BORE

C Complete using the words given.

usual (adj): happening most often in a particular situation
normal (adj): regular, ordinary, in accordance with what people expect
common (adj): ordinary, frequently encountered or often happening

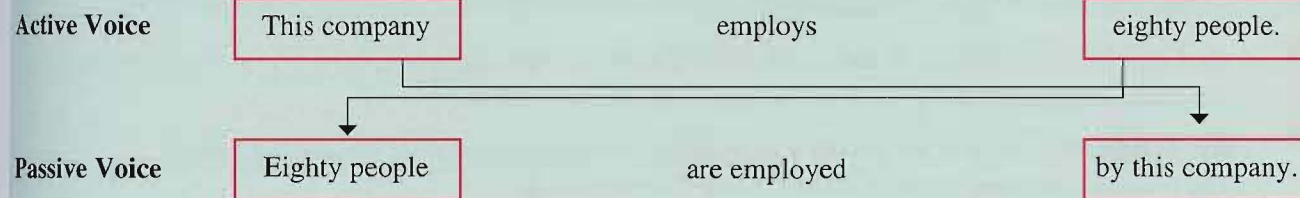
raise (v): (raise-raised-raised) lift sth, move it to a higher position (transitive)
rise (v): (rise-rose-risen) move upwards, stand up (intransitive)
arise (v): (arise-arose-arisen) begin to exist or become known to people (for a situation or problem)

1. Hans is a very common German name.
2. Despite his disability, he leads a normal life.
3. Waiter, I'll have my usual drink.
4. No problems will arise as long as you have organised the trip well.
5. Those of you in favour of the proposal, please raise your hands.
6. We watched the hot-air balloon rise into the sky.

14 | Passive Voice

The Passive Voice stresses the action itself, not who or what caused it. Only **transitive** verbs (=verbs with an object) can be used in the passive.

Formation



Verb forms in the Passive Voice

Verb Forms	Active Voice	Passive Voice
Present Simple	<i>They always serve tea with cakes.</i>	<i>Tea is always served with cakes (by them).</i>
Present Progressive	<i>They are renovating the hotel.</i>	<i>The hotel is being renovated.</i>
Past Simple	<i>I repaired the roof last year.</i>	<i>The roof was repaired (by me) last year.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>The scouts were pitching the tents when it started to rain.</i>	<i>The tents were being pitched by the scouts when it started to rain.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>We have removed all the furniture from the living room.</i>	<i>All the furniture has been removed from the living room.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>The fire had destroyed the house before the fire brigade arrived.</i>	<i>The house had been destroyed by the fire before the fire brigade arrived.</i>
Future "Will"	<i>Mary will pay the bill tomorrow.</i>	<i>The bill will be paid (by Mary) tomorrow.</i>
Going to	<i>They are going to publish his new novel next month.</i>	<i>His new novel is going to be published next month.</i>
Future Perfect Simple	<i>I will have posted all the letters by noon.</i>	<i>All the letters will have been posted by noon.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>We need to finish this work by tomorrow.</i>	<i>This work needs to be finished by tomorrow.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>He could have bought the tickets earlier.</i>	<i>The tickets could have been bought earlier.</i>
-ing form	<i>I hate people staring at me.</i>	<i>I hate being stared at.</i>
Modal Verbs	<i>You must take him to hospital.</i>	<i>He must be taken to hospital.</i>
Imperative	<i>Please complete this exercise.</i>	<i>This exercise must / should be completed.</i>

note

The Present, Past and Future Perfect Progressive and the Future Progressive are **not** used in the Passive Voice.

Use

We use the Passive Voice:

- when the agent (the person performing the action) is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context.
This portrait was painted before the 17th century.
The environment is being polluted more and more every day.
- when we want to emphasise the action itself, not the agent.
Eight people were injured in a car accident.
- in instructions, processes, formal statements, etc.
The lever on the right should be pulled down slowly.

note

- **Get** can be used instead of **be** in informal speech to show that something happened unexpectedly.
His jeans got caught on a spike as he was climbing over the fence.
- **By + agent** is used when we want to emphasise who does or what causes the action.
The investigation was ordered by the Police Commissioner.
- **with + instrument/material** } describe what caused the action or what the agent used to perform it.
of + material }
This photograph was taken with an expensive camera.
The basement was flooded with water. This cardigan is made of wool.

Note the following changes:

Active Voice	Passive Voice	Examples
Verbs with two objects	Both the indirect object (person) and the direct object (thing) can be used as subjects of a Passive sentence.	<i>He gave her a rose. →</i> <i>She was given a rose. or</i> <i>A rose was given to her.</i>
Question words (what, who, when, where, why, how)	Question Word + Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject + Past Participle • With who and whom we never omit by .	<i>Who wrote this play? →</i> <i>Who was this play written by? (informal)</i> <i>By whom was this play written? (formal)</i>
not...any → not...any of → not...anyone/anybody → not...anything →	no none of no one / nobody nothing	<i>They didn't change anything. →</i> <i>Nothing was changed.</i>
make hear help see, etc. } + bare infinitive	make hear help see, etc. } + full infinitive	<i>John made me leave. →</i> <i>I was made to leave (by John).</i>
let	be allowed to • When "let" has other meanings, it does not change in the Passive.	<i>They didn't let me go to the party. →</i> <i>I was not allowed to go to the party.</i> <i>You have to let the dog out. →</i> <i>The dog has to be let out.</i>
believe, consider, expect, find, hope, know, report, say, think, understand, etc.	• It + passive form of verb + that... (impersonal construction) • Subject + passive form of verb + full infinitive (personal construction)	<i>Scientists believe that this virus is deadly. →</i> <i>It is believed that this virus is deadly. or</i> <i>This virus is believed to be deadly.</i>
Verbs with prepositions	The preposition goes immediately after the verb.	<i>A car nearly knocked Jane down this morning. →</i> <i>Jane was nearly knocked down by a car this morning.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Rewrite the following sentences using the Passive Voice. More than one answer is possible in some cases.

- Everyone knows that fruit and vegetables are high in water content.
It is known that fruit and vegetables are high in water content./Fruit and vegetables are known to be high in water content.
- Mr and Mrs Philips didn't buy anything from the supermarket.
Nothing was bought from the supermarket by Mr and Mrs Philips.
- They first published this book in 1867.
This book was first published in 1867.
- What did they say about the accident?
What was said about the accident?
- They saw the President leave by the back door.
The President was seen to leave by the back door.
- The nurse gave the patient a robe to put on.
The patient was given a robe to put on (by the nurse)./A robe was given to the patient to put on (by the nurse).
- The waiters didn't seat any of the guests till after the orchestra played the national anthem.
None of the guests were seated by the waiters till after the national anthem was played by the orchestra.
- Mike will send flowers to Jane, who is in hospital.
Flowers will be sent to Jane, who is in hospital, by Mike./Jane, who is in hospital, will be sent flowers by Mike.
- The government provided the refugees with food.
The refugees were provided with food by the government./Food was provided to the refugees by the government.
- Who designed this building?
Who was this building designed by?
- The painter is spraying paint on the door with a spray gun.
Paint is being sprayed on the door with a spray gun (by the painter).
- The hurricane has totally destroyed the town.
The town has been totally destroyed by the hurricane.
- We could have taken the car to the garage today.
The car could have been taken to the garage today.
- The children are going to organise a surprise party.
A surprise party is going to be organised by the children.
- Local authorities hope that people will recycle more of their garbage.
It is hoped that people will recycle more of their garbage.

B Complete using the Active or the Passive Voice of the verbs in brackets.

- Yesterday, Kelly thought (think) that she was being followed (follow), so she went (go) to the nearest police station.
- We are staying (stay) with my parents because our house is being renovated (renovate) at the moment.
- Two new schools will be built (build) in our area because of the growth in population. Building will start (start) next month.
- The tables were being cleaned (clean) by the waiters when a group of tourists arrived (arrive).
- More chocolate bars have been consumed (consume) this year than in any other year.
- My car was repaired (repair) by the mechanic yesterday but unfortunately I crashed (crash) it into a tree this morning.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- People believe that the chairman of the committee is involved in the scandal.
be The chairman of the committee is believed to be involved in the scandal.
- She misses her friends visiting her in the evenings.
visited She misses being visited by her friends in the evenings.
- Why did they turn down our offer, Mr Steinberg?
turned Why was our offer turned down, Mr Steinberg?
- The teacher didn't let us leave before we finished the essay.
allowed We were not allowed to leave before we finished the essay.
- Nobody in my class can solve this maths problem.
solved This maths problem can't be solved by anyone in my class.
- They were giving the dog a bath when I arrived.
given The dog was being given a bath when I arrived.
- You know, people say that the Minister of Education is going to resign.
is You know, it is said that the Minister of Education is going to resign.
- Karen would have sent me a letter if she had known my address.
been I would have been sent a letter by Karen if she had known my address.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

look after:	take care of sb or sth
look forward to:	expect sth to happen because you think you will enjoy it
look into:	investigate, examine in detail
look over:	examine sth in order to get a general idea of it
look up:	try to find information in a book or list

- Students should have a dictionary to look up unknown words.
- We are all looking forward to going on holiday.
- Looking after old people isn't an easy job, but it's very rewarding.
- The manager briefly looked over his notes before the meeting.
- We must look into the matter before making a decision.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

VISITING LAS VEGAS

Las Vegas has a new attraction; the tallest American building west of the Mississippi. Its owners have high expectations of its success. The design is original and certainly different to anything ever seen before. Taller than the Eiffel Tower, the building has something for everyone. The description of what the building offers is quite amazing. The building has a casino, for which the state is famous for. Also, there is a fashionably decorated revolving restaurant, so that clients are able to see the impressive views through the glass windows. Three chapels are available for anyone who would like to get married and have a religious ceremony, 800 feet in the air. In addition, two of the highest rides are available for ride lovers. The roller coaster, 865 tracks in length, and the Space Shot ride, which goes up to the top of the tower at approximately 90 km per hour. Anyone for a go?

ATTRACT
EXPECT, ORIGIN
DIFFER
DESCRIBE

FASHION
IMPRESS
RELIGION
ADD
LONG

C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in future:	in the time to come
in general:	generally
in a hurry:	needing to do sth quickly
in love (with):	loving sb or sth
in a good/bad mood:	feeling cheerful/angry and impatient
in one's opinion:	according to what sb thinks about sth
in order/a mess:	tidy/untidy
in pain:	feeling pain
in particular:	particularly, especially
in person:	personally
in pieces:	broken up into small parts

1. Pam left the office in a hurry. She had a train to catch.
2. The estate agent said that in general/in his opinion the house was in a reasonable condition.
3. Mrs Kay loves animals, in particular cats.
4. You're late! In future, please try to be on time for our meetings.
5. Model aeroplanes come in pieces, which you put together yourself.
6. Jenny was in pain after the accident.
7. I'm always in a bad mood when it rains. It makes me miserable.
8. Mr Fane keeps his office in order. He is very tidy.
9. I'd rather meet my clients in person than speak to them over the phone.
10. In my opinion, we should sell the flat and buy a house.
11. I fell in love with the island and decided to live there.

D Complete using the words given.

persist (in) (v):	go on doing sth despite having difficulties
insist (on) (v):	say or demand sth very firmly and not change your mind about it
resist (v):	(1) refuse to accept sth (2) stop yourself from doing sth although you would like to do it

tough (adj):	(1) rough, violent (2) difficult to do or deal with
hard (adj):	(1) not soft or smooth (2) difficult to understand or do, requiring considerable effort to be accomplished
demanding (adj):	requiring a lot of time, effort, energy or attention

beside (prep):	next to
besides (prep):	in addition to

1. I insist you stay and have dinner with us.
2. Why do you persist in finishing the reports even though it's late?
3. I ate up the cake. I just couldn't resist it.
4. Al Capone had killed many people and was considered a tough criminal.
5. Children require a lot of care and guidance, that's why being a parent is very demanding.
6. The whole project requires a lot of hard work.
7. Besides Katie, I've also invited Jenny to the dinner party.
8. Please, place a wine glass beside every plate.

15 Causative Form

The Causative Form is used when we do not do something ourselves, but we arrange for someone else (usually an expert) to do it for us.

Formation						
Subject	+	Have/Get	+	Object	+	Past Participle
He		had		his car		serviced last week.

Verb forms in the Causative Form		
Verb forms	Active Voice	Causative Form
Present Simple	<i>We paint the house every year.</i>	<i>We have the house painted every year.</i>
Present Progressive	<i>Beth is washing her car.</i>	<i>Beth is having her car washed.</i>
Past Simple	<i>He typed three letters yesterday.</i>	<i>He had three letters typed yesterday.</i>
Past Progressive	<i>She was cleaning the carpet when I arrived.</i>	<i>She was having the carpet cleaned when I arrived.</i>
Future "Will"	<i>We will install the lights next week.</i>	<i>We will have the lights installed next week.</i>
Future Progressive	<i>I'll be planting some trees in the garden tomorrow morning.</i>	<i>I'll be having some trees planted in the garden tomorrow morning.</i>
Present Perfect Simple	<i>The girls have repaired their bicycles.</i>	<i>The girls have had their bicycles repaired.</i>
Present Perfect Progressive	<i>We've been importing clothes from Italy since we opened the shop.</i>	<i>We've been having clothes imported from Italy since we opened the shop.</i>
Past Perfect Simple	<i>He had organised the meeting before I called.</i>	<i>He had had the meeting organised before I called.</i>
Past Perfect Progressive	<i>They had been photocopying a book when the manager arrived.</i>	<i>They had been having a book photocopied when the manager arrived.</i>
Present Infinitive	<i>He managed to repair the roof.</i>	<i>He managed to have the roof repaired.</i>
-ing form	<i>I remember taking my blood pressure.</i>	<i>I remember having my blood pressure taken.</i>
Modal verbs	<i>You should fix the leakage in the tank.</i>	<i>You should have the leakage in the tank fixed.</i>
Imperative	<i>Clean the table, please.</i>	<i>Have the table cleaned, please.</i>

note

- Questions and negations are formed as in the Active Voice: with the auxiliaries **do/does** in the Present Simple and **did** in the Past Simple.
When did you last have your eyes tested?
- We can use **get** instead of **have**, especially in informal style.
I have to get the house painted this year.
- The Causative Form is often used instead of the Passive Voice to express an accident, a misfortune or something that had not been arranged:
They had their house broken into last week.
Mark had his leg broken in the car crash.
- If we want to mention who performs the action, we can add **by+agent** at the end of the sentence.
She always has her hair dyed by a hairdresser.

- **make/have someone do something** = cause someone to do something (but there is a slight difference in meaning)
Mrs Smith *made* her husband do the shopping. (=She insisted that her husband should do the shopping)
Mrs Smith *had* her husband do the shopping. (=She asked her husband to do the shopping)
- **get someone to do something** = persuade someone to do something
Mrs Smith *got* her husband to do the shopping. (=She persuaded her husband to do the shopping)

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- Brian will _____ by the dentist tomorrow.
 (a) get his teeth polished b. polish his teeth c. have his teeth polish
- When _____ your new carpet fitted?
 a. had you (b) did you have c. you had
- He often _____ at the dry cleaner's.
 (a) has his suits cleaned b. has cleaned his suits c. cleans his suits
- Debbie knows how to sew and _____ herself.
 a. has all her dresses made b. gets all her dresses made (c) makes all her dresses
- Please, _____ the accounts checked by the accountant first thing tomorrow morning.
 a. you have (b) have c. will have
- Jake _____ his passport renewed last week.
 (a) didn't have b. hadn't c. not had
- We postponed _____ because we didn't have enough money.
 a. having painted our house b. have painted our house (c) having our house painted
- She _____ while shopping yesterday.
 a. had stolen her wallet b. stole her wallet (c) had her wallet stolen
- The teacher _____ the board.
 (a) had John clean b. had John cleaned c. had John to clean
- If you feel dizzy, you should _____.
 a. your blood pressure have checked (b) have your blood pressure checked c. checked your blood pressure
- I always _____ to my friends living abroad because I like to keep in touch with them.
 a. have e-mails sent (b) send e-mails c. have e-mails sent
- I would like to _____ for me, as I'm an awful cook.
 (a) have my cooking done b. having my cooking done c. have done my cooking
- Macey _____ her organise a party at her house.
 a. got me help b. got me helped (c) got me to help
- _____ your newspaper delivered to your house every morning?
 a. Have (b) Do you have c. Do you

B Complete using the Active Voice or the Causative Form of the words given.

1. **Mr Fane:** Are you using the computer?
Mr Parker: Yes, I am typing my letters (my letters / type) at the moment.
Mr Fane: Do you type all your letters yourself?
Mr Parker: No, I don't have the time to do that. I usually have my letters typed (my letters / type) by my secretary, but she's away today.
2. **Macey:** I had my car serviced (my car / service) by the mechanic yesterday. The bad thing is that I had to pay quite a lot of money for it.
Luke: Didn't you know that my brother is training to become a mechanic? He always services my car (my car / service) for me. Maybe he could have a look at yours next time, too.
3. **Tanya:** What are you doing? Are you painting the house (the house / paint) yourself?
Brenda: No, of course not. I am having the house painted (the house / paint) by a painter. I'm just helping him. Do you want to come in and have a look?

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Please, arrange for these parcels to be posted as soon as possible.
have Please, have these parcels posted as soon as possible.
2. My car will need servicing before I go on holiday.
get I'll need to get my car serviced before I go on holiday.
3. Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football.
had Gary had his front teeth broken while he was playing football.
4. Betty eventually agreed to lend me her motorbike for the day.
got I eventually got Betty to lend me her motorbike for the day.
5. A plumber is repairing my dishwasher this afternoon.
repaired I am having my dishwasher repaired this afternoon.
6. Kelly, does the cleaner clean your house twice a week?
have Kelly, do you have your house cleaned twice a week?
7. A bank clerk was cashing my cheque when the robbers entered the bank.
cashed I was having my cheque cashed when the robbers entered the bank.
8. I haven't been to the hairdresser's for a haircut lately.
cut I haven't had my hair cut lately.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

- make for:** go towards a place
make out: manage (with difficulty) to see, hear or understand sth
make up: (1) invent a story or excuse
 (2) become friends again after a quarrel or disagreement
mix up: confuse people or things
move in: begin to live in a house or place
move out: stop living in a house or place and go somewhere else

1. I always mix up the oil and the vinegar because they are in similar bottles.
 2. Mark moved out of the flat after an argument with his flatmate.
 3. We quickly made for the barn when it started raining.
 4. Don't believe anything he says. He's always making up stories.
 5. Could you speak up, please? I can't make out what you're saying.
 6. We've got the keys to our new house and tomorrow we're going to move in.

B Complete using prepositions.

1. I kept thinking of/about the accident all night long.
2. Pet owners care for/about their pets a great deal.
3. Could you take care of little Jimmy tonight?
4. You can rely on your good friends when you need them.
5. I have a need for coffee in the morning.
6. Teachers feel responsible for the progress of their students.
7. I'm very thankful for all your help.
8. Teachers must learn to be patient with their troublesome students.
9. You should take responsibility for your actions.
10. The amount of food you make depends on the number of guests you're expecting.
11. I'd like to thank you for the gift you gave me.
12. She was grateful to him for helping her out at such a bad time.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

SSH, LET THEM SLEEP!

The discovery that a member of your family is sleepwalking may be alarming, but it is not an uncommon phenomenon. Both adults and children sleepwalk, however it is more common in children.

Sleepwalking is not a psychological disorder, as some may think. Nor is there any connection between dreams and sleepwalking. The explanation which experts give for sleepwalking is that it is mainly due to being tired and under a lot of stress. Anxiety, pressure at work or at school or even the loss of a favourite possession could trigger it off.

Sleepwalkers move easily around the house despite the darkness, sometimes opening drawers as if searching for something. It is difficult to wake up a sleepwalker and it is considered unwise because it can cause great distress. The following morning the sleepwalker doesn't usually remember anything.

DISCOVER

ALARM

ORDER

CONNECT

TIRE

ANXIOUS, PRESS

POSSESS

DARK

WISE

D Complete using the words given.

ancient (adj):	of the distant past
antique (adj):	made in the style of an earlier period
old-fashioned (adj):	no longer fashionable
traditional (adj):	in accordance with tradition
elderly (adj):	quite old, past middle age (for people)
old (adj):	no longer young or new
mature (adj):	(1) fully developed in personality and behaviour (2) when sth is left for a time to allow its full flavour to develop (usually for wine or cheese)
ripe (adj):	fully grown and ready to be eaten or used (usually for fruit)

1. My grandfather is very active even though he is old.
2. My father buys antique furniture, restores it and then sells it at a profit.
3. This is traditional Irish music. Do you like it?
4. In ancient times, people believed there were many gods.
5. My grandmother still makes jam in the good old-fashioned way.
6. An elderly/old couple won the trip to Hawaii.
7. Ripe bananas are great for making banana cake.
8. Jane is very mature for a fifteen-year-old.

16 Conditionals

Type 1: Real situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Present Tense (simple or continuous) or Present Perfect Simple (if the action has already finished)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Future tense <i>If Martin gets the job, he will move to Oxford.</i> can/may/might/must/should + infinitive <i>If you have finished your homework, you may go out with your friends.</i> Present Simple <i>If you mix blue and yellow, you get green.</i> Imperative <i>If you miss the train, take the bus.</i> 	<p>real or probable situations in the present or future</p> <p>general truths (if=when, whenever)</p> <p>instructions or commands</p>

note

- If-clauses either precede or follow the main clause. If they precede the main clause, we separate them with a comma.

If you eat a lot of sweets, you'll gain weight.

BUT: *You'll gain weight if you eat a lot of sweets.*

- If there is only a slight possibility of something happening, we can use **should**.

If you should ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.

In this case, **if** can be omitted; **should** comes before the subject (inversion).

Should you ever go to Colombia, visit the Museum of Gold in Bogota.

Type 2: Unreal situations in the present or future.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Tense (simple or continuous)	<p>would could might } + present infinitive</p> <p><i>If he were still living with his parents, he would be able to save more money.</i></p> <p><i>If I won a lot of money, I would spend most of it travelling round the world.</i></p> <p><i>If I were you, I wouldn't argue with my employer.</i></p>	<p>unreal or imaginary situations in the present</p> <p>events that are unlikely to happen in the future</p> <p>to give advice</p>

note

- We use **were** instead of **was** in type 2 conditional sentences in formal English.

If he were not so lazy, he would be more successful.

- If** can be omitted when it is followed by **were**; **were** comes before the subject (inversion).

Were she taller, she could become a model. (=if she were taller, ...)

- We can use **will/would** in the if-clause (Type 1 +2 conditional sentences) to express desire, willingness, politeness, insistence, annoyance, uncertainty or to make a request.

If you will keep on being so noisy, I'll have to report you.

I would appreciate it if you would turn the radio down.

Type 3: Unreal situations in the past.

If clause	Main clause	Use
If + Past Perfect (simple or continuous)	would could might } + perfect infinitive <i>If he had known your phone number, he would have called you.</i> <i>If I had been more careful, I would have passed the driving test.</i>	for actions that did not happen to express criticism or regret

note

If can sometimes be omitted; **had** comes before the subject (inversion).

Had you arrived earlier, you would have met my grandmother. (= If you had arrived earlier...)

Mixed conditionals

Mixed conditionals do not follow the tense rules strictly; we can make combinations according to the context:

If I had a car, I would have picked you up from the airport. (Types 2, 3)

If you had taken some aspirin, you would feel better now. (Types 3, 2)

note

Conditionals can be introduced with other expressions instead of **if**:

- **unless** (= if not),
e.g. *Unless you hurry, you'll miss the bus.*
 - **as long as/provided/providing** (= only if),
e.g. *You can borrow my camera as long as you promise to handle it with care.*
You can visit me anytime provided/providing (that) you call me in advance.
 - **in case**,
e.g. *I'll buy some mineral water in case I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water before I get thirsty.)*
But: *I'll buy some mineral water if I get thirsty (= I'll buy some mineral water when I get thirsty.)*
 - **on condition (that)** (= provided),
e.g. *On condition (that) she passes her exam, her parents will let her go to Italy for the holidays.*
 - **but for** (= if it wasn't/hadn't been for),
e.g. *But for the rain, we would have enjoyed the picnic.*
 - **or else** (= if not/otherwise),
e.g. *Hurry up, or else we'll miss the train.*
 - **Suppose/Supposing** (= imagine if),
e.g. *Suppose/Supposing the lights went out, what would we do?*
 - **only if**,
e.g. *She will go to the party only if she has finished her work.*
 - **even if**,
e.g. *He wouldn't talk about his plans even if you begged him to.*
 - **whether**,
e.g. *Whether he agrees with me or not is not important to me.*
- ▶ We never use the Future "Will" after these structures, except for **or else** and **whether**.

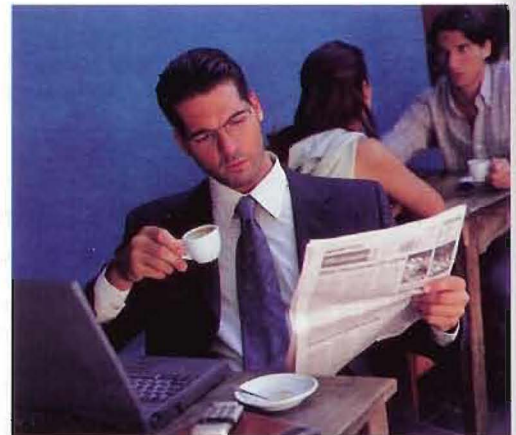
Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- If you _____ the Louvre while in Paris, buy me a poster.
a. visited **b. should visit** c. have visited
- If I had installed an alarm, the thieves wouldn't _____ able to break into my house last week.
a. be b. had been **c. have been**
- If I _____ the job, I will take you out to dinner on Saturday to celebrate.
a. have got **b. get** c. got
- I would make a film with Leonardo DiCaprio if I _____ a famous director, but I'm not.
a. were b. had been c. will be
- Karen _____ for Athens tomorrow providing the weather is fine.
a. will leave b. would leave c. had left
- If I were in your shoes, I _____ to them.
a. will apologise b. had apologised **c. would apologise**
- If you _____ the application to the company on time, they might have called you for an interview. I can't understand why you didn't!
a. send **b. had sent** c. will send

B Make sentences using conditionals.

- The lift may not work so use the stairs.
If the lift doesn't work (isn't working), use the stairs.
- I want a new car but I can't save up enough money.
If I could save up enough money, I would buy a new car.
- This isn't a very good camera. The photos I took aren't very clear.
If this were a better camera, the photos I took would have been clearer.
- I think that you shouldn't drink so much coffee.
If I were you, I wouldn't drink so much coffee.
- We didn't have your address so we didn't send you a Christmas card.
If we had had your address, we would have sent you a Christmas card.
- The bus drivers might be on strike tomorrow, so I'll probably catch a taxi.
If the bus drivers are on strike tomorrow, I'll catch (I may catch) a taxi.



C Complete using mixed conditionals.

- He wouldn't be (not be) ill today if he hadn't walked (not walk) home in the rain last night.
- You've been playing with that cat for hours. If you were (be) allergic to cats, you would have known (know) by now.
- If they caught (catch) a taxi, they will be (be) here any minute now.
- We wouldn't be (not be) stuck here now if you had taken (take) the car to the garage before we left for our holiday.
- If I were (be) you, I wouldn't have sold (not sell) my car before I bought another one. How will you get to work now?

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- If she doesn't follow a stricter diet, she won't lose any weight.
unless She won't lose any weight unless she follows a stricter diet.
- I wouldn't have succeeded if my parents hadn't encouraged and supported me.
but I wouldn't have succeeded but for my parents' encouragement and support.
- He has twisted his ankle, so he can't play tennis this afternoon.
not Had he not twisted his ankle, he would have been able to play tennis this afternoon.
- We didn't follow the directions, that's why we got lost.
would We would not have got lost if we had followed the directions.
- You should read more to improve your vocabulary; that's what I'd do.
were If I were you, I would read more to improve my vocabulary.
- Jenny can get a puppy only if she promises to take care of it.
long Jenny can get a puppy as long as she promises to take care of it.
- I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city if they offered me a higher salary.
condition I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city on condition (that) they offered me a higher salary.
- Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured.
not If they had not been wearing seat belts, they could have been seriously injured.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

- pay back:** give back money you have borrowed
- pay off:** give sb back all the money you owe them
- point out:** draw sb's attention to sth
- pull down:** demolish
- pull over:** move closer to the side of the road and stop (for vehicles)

- John pointed out his old school friend in the photograph.
- The policeman asked him to pull over for a breathalyser test.
- I'll give you the money, but when will you pay me back ?
- That building will be pulled down next week.
- It will take me two years to pay off/back my loan.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

LION KING

The lion is known as the king of the jungle. Perhaps this is because of its size, strength and ability to run up to 35 mph.

Yet, for twenty hours a day, the lion just lies under the sun doing nothing. However, when it gets hungry, its manner changes and it becomes threatening. Its only intention is to satisfy its enormous appetite.

In its natural surroundings, the lion will eat anything, from rats to animals as large as giraffes. But zebra meat provides the lion with the greatest satisfaction.

Lions live in groups called prides. The lioness is truly amazing. She is quicker than the male. She is so caring that she will hunt and look after her young for two years before they become independent.

STRONG, ABLE

HUNGER, THREAT

INTEND

SURROUND

SATISFY

TRUE

CARE

DEPEND

C Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

in practice/theory:	actually happening/ theoretically
in private/public:	without/with the presence of others
in reality:	actually, in fact
in secret:	secretly
in the shade/sun:	protected from/ exposed to sunlight
in tears:	crying
in time (for):	early or at the appointed time
in touch (with):	in contact with sb
in uniform:	wearing the same special clothes as everyone else at work or school
in a loud/low voice:	loudly/quietly
in the way:	when sb or sth stops you from moving forward or seeing clearly
in other words:	saying sth differently

- The mayor hasn't been seen in public for some time.
- Do you keep in touch with your old school friends?
- Martha looked very upset. I saw her running out of the office in tears.
- Your idea works in theory, but not in practice.
- You've arrived just in time for lunch.
- Could you help me move this table? It's in the way.
- Nobody knew about our affair. We used to meet once a week in secret.
- The children should all be in uniform for the parade.
- The mirrors made the room look bigger, but in reality it was quite small.
- You shouldn't stay in the sun for too long, you'll get burnt.
- Your car isn't reliable enough for a long trip, in other words, you'd better not take it.
- I can't hear you very well. Could you repeat that in a loud(er) voice?

D Complete using the words given.

vacant (adj):	not being used or occupied (e.g. hotel room, job position)
free (adj):	not being used or occupied by sb or not reserved for sb to use (e.g. table, seat)
empty (adj):	with no people or things in it
deserted (adj):	becoming empty because everybody has left
left (adj):	what remains after the rest has gone or been used
abandoned (adj):	no longer used or occupied (e.g. building)
alone (adj):	not with any other person
lonely (adj):	unhappy because you are alone
single (adj):	not married

alive (adj):	living, not dead (not followed by a noun)
live (adj):	(event, performance or programme) being broadcast exactly at the time it happens, not recorded in advance
lively (adj):	full of energy or enthusiasm
living (adj):	alive, not dead (followed by a noun)

- This box is empty. Can I put the rubbish in it?
- We must buy some more cheese, there's only a small piece left.
- I'm sorry. We have no more vacant rooms. The hotel is full.
- The bandits hid in the abandoned/empty/deserted warehouse.
- The only free table we have is the one in the corner.
- It was 1:00 a.m. and the usually busy street was now quiet and deserted/empty.
- All my friends are married except Kate, who is still single.
- I get really lonely at Christmas because all my family live abroad.
- Mr Jones came to the party alone as his wife was away on business.
- The football match was broadcast live in thirty countries.
- The rock group gave a lively performance on stage.
- The wounded bird was barely alive.
- The old man said that life during the war was a living nightmare.

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- If you _____ a flight, would you have gone by train?
a. haven't booked b. don't book c. hadn't booked d. won't book
- Here are your photos. We _____ at the photographer's.
 a. got them developed b. develop them c. got developed them d. got them develop
- Betty _____ a lot of presents on her birthday.
a. was been given b. gave c. was giving d. was given
- The dog must _____ to the vet.
a. taken b. be taken c. be take d. take
- _____ Diana, congratulate her for me, will you?
a. Should you saw b. If should you see c. Should you see d. If you saw
- My son told me he tied his shoes by _____.
a. him b. himself c. his d. his own
- We have had the roof of our house _____.
a. to replace b. replace c. been replaced d. replaced
- Sue _____ by the police all night.
 a. was being questioned b. was questioning c. is being questioned d. had questioned
- Kev _____ into the tree if the brakes on his bike had been working.
a. wouldn't crash b. won't crash c. won't have crashed d. wouldn't have crashed
- Jack _____ last night.
a. had stolen his wallet b. his wallet stolen c. had his wallet stolen d. has stolen his wallet
- I'll lend you my car _____ you promise to drive carefully.
 a. as long as b. unless c. even if d. whether
- If I _____ a house like that, I'd look after it better.
a. had owned b. have owned c. owned d. own
- He got his brother _____ the dishes.
 a. to wash b. wash c. washing d. to have washed
- Don't go out by _____ at night. It's dangerous.
a. myself b. yourself c. me d. her
- I'll find you _____ you go.
a. whatever b. whichever c. whenever d. wherever

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- She has arranged to work this afternoon, so she can't come shopping with us.
not Had she not arranged to work this afternoon, she would have been able to come shopping with us.
- Someone has stolen my bike, Dad.
had I have had my bike stolen, Dad.
- People expect that the weather will change soon.
to The weather is expected to change soon.
- I wouldn't mind contacting her but I don't have her phone number.
would I would contact her if I had her phone number.
- When did they replace the broken windows, Annie?
replaced When were the broken windows replaced, Annie?
- You are all welcome to have some more cake.
help Feel free to help yourselves to some more cake.
- Chris, I shall be glad to show you round if you decide to visit London.
should Chris, if you should/should you decide to visit London, I shall be glad to show you round.
- We've asked an electrician to install lights in the garden.
have We will have an electrician install lights in the garden.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- I'm really _____ Christmas this year.
a. looking after b. looking out for c. looking into **d. looking forward to**
- It's raining! Quick, let's make _____ that shop.
a. out b. up c. in **d. for**
- During the month of August, Athens is almost _____.
a. vacant b. abandoned c. left **d. deserted**
- After the break, we'll _____ with chapter three of the book.
a. insist b. persist c. keep **d. continue**
- This is a valuable _____ chair which dates back to the eighteenth century.
a. antique b. old-fashioned c. ancient d. traditional
- My job is so _____ that I don't think I'll be able to take a summer break.
a. demanding b. persisting c. hard d. tough
- Is he _____ enough to take on so much responsibility?
a. elderly b. ancient c. ripe **d. mature**
- Billy the Kid was wanted dead or _____.
a. live **b. alive** c. lively d. living
- I went to Spain on holiday _____, but I made a lot of friends there.
a. single **b. alone** c. lonely d. free
- You'd better _____ up all the unknown words in the dictionary.
a. point b. make c. mix **d. look**
- The room was in a _____.
a. hurry **b. mess** c. mood d. shade

12. His handwriting is so difficult to read. I can hardly _____ what he's written.
 a. make out b. make up c. look into d. point out
13. If you have a problem, don't hesitate to _____ your hand.
 a. raise b. rise c. arise d. rised
14. Mike was _____ after he broke his leg.
 a. in love b. in order c. in pain d. in person
15. Please don't forget to _____ the money you have borrowed from me.
 a. pull over b. pay back c. point out d. pull down

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. John couldn't give a logical **explanation** as to why he had arrived so late. **EXPLAIN**
2. The eyewitness gave an accurate **description** of the bank robber. **DESCRIBE**
3. For **additional** information on flight times and package holidays, contact your travel agent. **ADD**
4. We lost most of our **possessions** in the flood. **POSSESS**
5. I was **unable** to carry my luggage, so I had to use a trolley. **ABLE**
6. The attic is in **disorder**. Let's tidy it up. **ORDER**
7. Alice had a **tiring** day at work and went to bed early. **TIRE**
8. He got the **impression** that the situation was out of control. **IMPRESS**

C Choose the correct answers.

My friend Sarah wanted to (1) _____ her house painted, but she didn't want to do it (2) _____. So, she decided to call the number of a painting company she had seen on an advertisement that (3) _____ left on her car. A young man answered the phone, and Sarah told him about her house. An appointment (4) _____ for the following Thursday. When the day came, a knock (5) _____ on Susan's door. When Susan opened it, she saw two twelve-year-old boys standing in front of (6) _____. She was caught by surprise! They explained that they had wanted to earn some extra money for (7) _____, so they had created and handed out the ad. If Susan (8) _____ the painters were twelve, she never would have called to begin with! She told them she was sorry, but she preferred to have her house painted by professionals.

1. a. have 4. a. was being made 7. a. itself
 b. having had b. will be made b. them
 c. having c. was made c. him
 d. have had d. was making d. themselves
2. a. her 5. a. had been heard 8. a. would have known
 b. she b. having heard b. had known
 c. herself c. was hearing c. knows
 d. hers d. was heard d. was to know
3. a. was being 6. a. her
 b. had been b. she
 c. having been c. it
 d. were d. them

17 Unreal Past- Would rather- Had better

A. Unreal Past

Past tenses referring to unreal situations are called Unreal Past. The **Past Simple** can refer to untrue or imaginary situations in the **present** or **future**, while the **Past Perfect Simple** can refer to unreal situations in the **past**.

Unreal past with present or future time reference

Structure	Use	Examples
If + Past Tense	Type 2 Conditional	<i>If I had a car, I would drive to work.</i>
Imagine Suppose Supposing } + Past Tense	imaginary situations in the present or future	<i>Suppose you lived in a small village, would you miss the city?</i>
wish If only } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> wish about a present situation that we would like to be different ► If only is stronger than wish. 	<i>I wish I lived in the country. (I don't.)</i> <i>If only I were on holiday.</i>
wish If only } + would + infinitive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to express annoyance, irritation, dissatisfaction to make a wish concerning a present situation which is unlikely to change ► The subject of would must be different from the subject of wish. 	<i>I wish he wouldn't smoke in the office.</i> <i>I wish time wouldn't pass so quickly!</i>
wish If only } + could + infinitive	to make a wish or express our regret about sth we cannot do at present.	<i>She wishes she could speak French. (she can't.)</i>
as if as though } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> untrue situations in the present ► Were is used instead of was. 	<i>He speaks as if he were a foreigner. (He is not.)</i>
It's time It's about time It's high time } + Past Tense	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to indicate that the time has come for someone to do something to express criticism or a complaint about sth that should have already been done ► It's about time/it's high time are stronger than It's time. ► It's time + infinitive: it is the right time (for sb) to do something 	<i>It's time we went home.</i> <i>It's time they started working.</i> <i>It's about time we got rid of this old car!</i> <i>It's time to tidy up.</i> <i>It's time for them to start working.</i>

Unreal past with past time reference

If + Past perfect	Type 3 Conditional	<i>If she had worked harder, she would have been promoted.</i>
wish If only } + Past Perfect	to express sorrow or regret about sth that did or did not happen in the past	<i>I wish I had remembered her birthday. (I didn't.)</i>
as if as though } + Past Perfect	unreal situations in the past	<i>He talked to everyone as if he had known them for years.</i>
Imagine Suppose Supposing } + Past Perfect	imaginary situations in the past	<i>Suppose he hadn't fled his country, would he be in prison now?</i>

note

- **wish** can also go with an infinitive (meaning **want**) or a noun:

She wishes to speak to the headmaster.

We wish you happiness.

- **wish** is used for unreal or improbable situations; **hope** is used for possible situations.

I wish you were here.

I hope to see you when I come to London.

B. Would rather (= I would prefer)

If the subject of **would rather** is the same as the subject of the main verb:

	Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Affirmative	Present/Future	would rather + present bare infinitive	<i>She'd rather stay at home tonight.</i>
	Past	would rather + perfect bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather have travelled to Egypt last winter.</i>
Negative	Present/Future	would rather + not + present bare infinitive	<i>I'd rather not eat any more today.</i>
	Past	would rather + not + perfect bare infinitive	<i>Nick would rather not have gone to the party yesterday.</i>

If the subject of **would rather** is different from the subject of the main verb:

Present/Future	would rather + subject + Past Simple (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you left your umbrella outside.</i> <i>I'd rather you didn't smoke in the office.</i>
Past	would rather + subject + Past Perfect (affirmative or negative form)	<i>I'd rather you had informed me earlier.</i> <i>I'd rather she hadn't borrowed my bicycle.</i>

Synonymous expressions

Structure	Examples
• prefer + -ing/noun + to + -ing/noun	<i>He prefers swimming to scuba diving.</i>
• prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (general preference)	<i>She prefers to travel by plane rather than (travel) by boat.</i>
• would prefer + full infinitive + rather than + bare infinitive (preference in a particular situation)	<i>I would prefer to go to the cinema rather than stay at home.</i>

note

- **would rather + bare infinitive + than + bare infinitive**

I'd rather walk than go by bus.

- **would sooner** is used in the same way as **would rather**.

I'd sooner we left earlier. (present/future time reference)

He'd sooner she hadn't spent so much money on clothes. (past time reference)

C. Had better (= should)

Had better expresses strong advice, a warning or a threat and is stronger than **should** and **ought to**.

Its subject is always the same as the subject of the main verb.

Time Reference	Structure	Examples
Present / Future	had better + (not) + present bare infinitive	<i>He'd better see a doctor as soon as possible.</i> <i>You'd better not drive so fast.</i>
Past	It would have been better if + Past Perfect	<i>It would have been better if you hadn't argued with him last week.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Write sentences using *wish* or *If only*.

- My sister always takes my car without asking me. She's so inconsiderate.
- Our luggage was stolen from our hotel room. We should have insured it.
- I found a puppy. I want to keep it but my parents won't let me.
- I woke up late and missed my flight to Rome.
- Everyone in my family can paint or draw, but I'm not artistic at all.



I wish/If only my sister didn't/wouldn't take my car without asking me. I wish/If only my sister wasn't/weren't so inconsiderate.

I wish/If only our luggage hadn't been stolen. I wish/If only we had insured our luggage.

I wish/If only I could keep the puppy I found. I wish/If only my parents would let/let me keep the puppy I found.

I wish/If only I hadn't woken up late. I wish/If only I hadn't missed my flight to Rome.

I wish/If only I were artistic. I wish/If only I could paint or draw.

B Choose the correct answers.

- You had better _____ in here. The fire alarm might go off.
 a. not smoke b. to not smoke c. not smoked
- Imagine you _____ the opportunity to become a guitarist. What would you have done?
 a. not had b. don't have c. hadn't had
- I would rather you _____ her about the situation. Now she's very worried.
 a. not have told b. didn't tell c. hadn't told
- It's time _____. Don't you think?
 a. to have left b. to leave c. we had left
- I get along with my brother but I wish he _____ his clothes lying around the house.
 a. couldn't leave b. hadn't left c. wouldn't leave
- After our argument she acted as if nothing _____.
 a. had happened b. would happen c. has happened
- He would rather _____ pizza. He didn't like the spaghetti.
 a. ordered b. have ordered c. had ordered
- I'd prefer _____ tea rather than coffee, if you don't mind.
 a. have b. to have c. having
- I've got a terrible headache. If only I _____ to bed late last night.
 a. hadn't gone b. didn't go c. wouldn't go
- I really liked our day trip to the countryside. I wish we _____ again next week.
 a. going b. went c. could go

C Choose the correct answers.

SMOKING IN PUBLIC PLACES

I'm not a smoker and I prefer (1) _____ around non-smokers rather than smokers. In fact, I think it's about time they (2) _____ smoking. I hear smokers talk about smoking as though it (3) _____ harmless but we all know the damage it can cause. Why should I have to put up with it in public places? If only people (4) _____ the consequences of smoking, they might not take up the habit in the first place. The government had better (5) _____ action soon. It's time they (6) _____ smoking everywhere. The rate of lung-cancer related deaths is increasing every year.

1. (a) to be
b. be
c. having been

3. (a) were
b. be
c. had been

5. a. be taking
(b) take
c. taken

2. a. are banning
(b) banned
c. had banned

4. a. consider
(b) considered
c. have considered

6. (a) prohibited
b. will prohibit
c. have prohibited

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.
wishes Jeremy _____ *wishes he had accepted (hadn't rejected)* _____ the job he was offered.
- If you had heard the politician speak, you'd think he had won the elections.
though The politician spoke _____ *as though he had won* _____ the elections.
- I think you should get a haircut!
about It's _____ *about time you got* _____ a haircut!
- I can't stand Betty borrowing my clothes without asking me first.
rather I _____ *would rather Betty didn't* _____ borrow my clothes without asking me first.
- It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.
wouldn't I _____ *wish governments wouldn't spend* _____ so much money on nuclear weapons.
- I advise you to see the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.
better You _____ *had better see* _____ the dentist today, otherwise your toothache will get worse.
- It would have been better to have hired a car during the holidays.
only If _____ *only we had hired* _____ a car during the holidays.
- I would like to know how to play the piano.
knew I _____ *wish I knew how* _____ to play the piano.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the phrasal verbs given.

put aside:	keep sth to be dealt with or used at a later time
put away:	store sth tidily where it is usually kept
put off:	postpone
put on:	(1) wear (clothes) (2) gain weight
put out:	extinguish (a cigarette or fire)
put up:	offer hospitality
put up with:	tolerate or accept sth unpleasant

- I always put on weight during the winter.
- One thing I can't put up with is rudeness.
- You shouldn't put off the meeting with Mr Brown.
- Luckily, the fire brigade came quickly and put out the fire.
- Every summer I put up my friends who come from Australia.
- You can play with the toys as long as you put them away after you've finished playing with them.
- I always put money aside for the holidays.

B Complete using prepositions.

- Do you believe in ghosts?
- You'll find the information about/on prehistoric animals in the encyclopaedia.
- I insist on paying for dinner.
- The employees were unaware of the financial problems the company was having.
- I always listen to the news in the morning.
- Are you certain of/about the time our flight leaves?
- Kim is familiar with most of the computer programmes on the market.
- We haven't heard from Jane for weeks.
- Mr Kent had no knowledge of your whereabouts.
- Did you inform them of/about the new plan?
- Were you serious about buying a yacht?
- I knew nothing of/about Tony's accident.

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

JUST TO BE ON THE SAFE SIDE...

People are becoming more security conscious these days. Crimes like burglary and theft are definitely on the increase. One of the most painful experiences a home owner can have is to arrive home and find that his or her valuables have disappeared because a window had accidentally been left open. What can we do to protect ourselves?

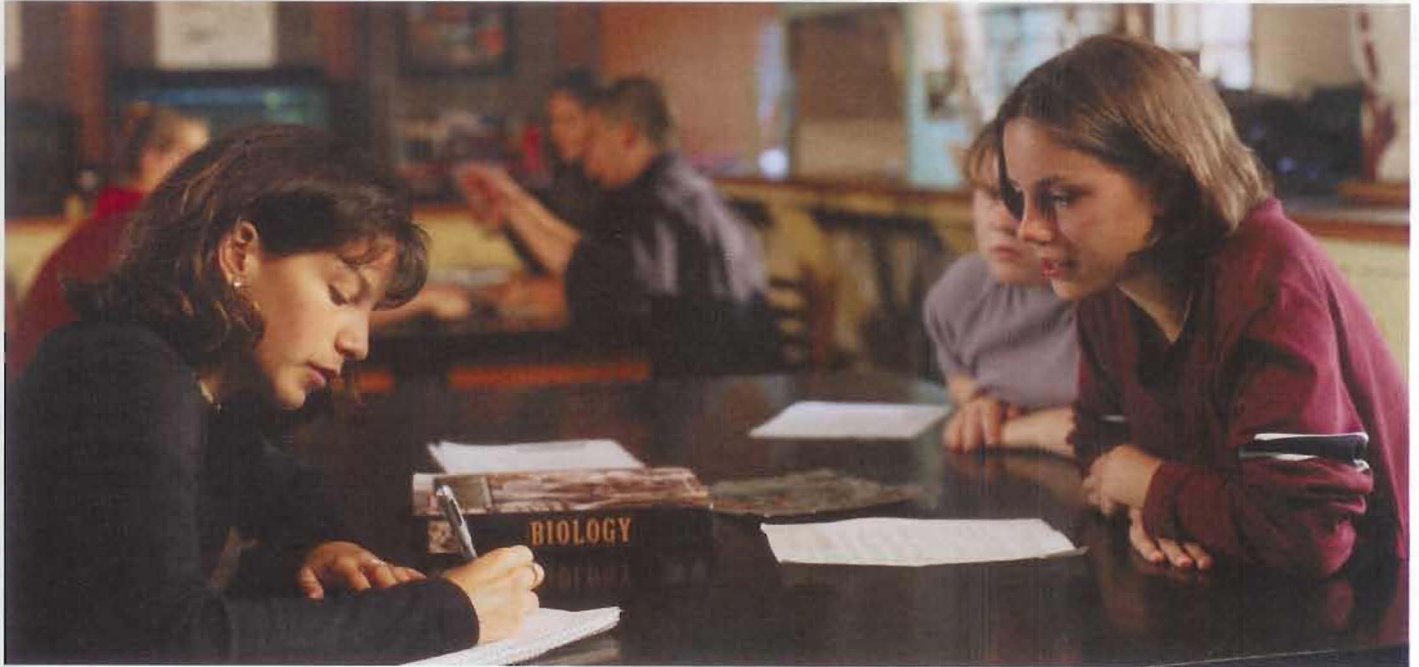
The most important piece of advice is to make sure that your insurance coverage is up to date. Another sensible thing to do is to go along to your local police station, where they will be more than willing to make suggestions on reliable ways of safeguarding your property.

**THIEF, PAIN
OWN
VALUE, ACCIDENT**

**ADVISE
INSURE, SENSE**

SUGGEST, RELY

D Complete using the words given.



wild (adj):	very excited and out of control
mad (adj):	(1) very angry (2) crazy or foolish
furious (adj):	extremely angry
bad-tempered (adj):	not cheerful, getting angry easily
irritable (adj):	getting annoyed easily
nervous (adj):	obviously anxious or worried about sth that is happening or might happen

sensitive (adj):	(1) easily affected or harmed by sth (2) aware of and understanding other people's needs and problems
sensible (adj):	based on reason, not on emotions

timid (adj):	shy, nervous, lacking in courage and self-confidence
shy (adj):	nervous and uncomfortable in the company of other people
embarrassed (adj):	feeling uncomfortable in a situation or guilty about sth
ashamed (adj):	feeling guilty or embarrassed because of sth you have done

- The students were obviously nervous before the exam.
- In the heat, babies get irritable and restless.
- My parents were furious/mad with me when they found out that I had used the car without their permission.
- The crowd went wild/mad as soon as the band began playing.
- Some people are bad-tempered by nature.
- I'll tell you the truth. Just don't get mad/furious.
- Michelle is a very good social worker. She's very sensitive to other people's problems.
- The sensible thing to do would be to get a lawyer's advice.
- You should be ashamed of yourself for acting like a child.
- The shy/timid girl found it difficult to make friends at the new school.
- You can imagine how embarrassed I felt when I realised I was wearing two different shoes.
- I'm too shy/timid/embarrassed to sing in public.

18 | Reported Speech

In **Direct Speech** we give the exact words somebody said and use quotation marks. In **Reported Speech** we give the meaning of what someone said, but with some changes and without quotation marks.

Direct Speech: *She said, "I'm tired."*
"I'm tired," she said.

Reported Speech: *She said (that) she was tired.*

We usually introduce **Reported Speech** with the verbs **tell** (when there is a person/pronoun as an object) and **say** (when there is no person/pronoun as an object). **That** is optional.

"I'm leaving, Tom," she said. → *She told Tom (that) she was leaving.*

"I'm leaving," she said. → *She said (that) she was leaving.*

Changing from direct to reported speech

	Direct Speech		Reported Speech
Tenses	Present Simple	<i>He said, "I want to buy a new car."</i>	Past Simple <i>He said (that) he wanted to buy a new car.</i>
	Present Progressive	<i>She said, "I'm learning Spanish."</i>	Past Progressive <i>She said (that) she was learning Spanish.</i>
	Past Simple	<i>"I missed the train," he said.</i>	Past Perfect Simple <i>He said (that) he had missed the train.</i>
	Present Perfect Simple	<i>"I've missed the train," he said.</i>	
	Past Progressive	<i>She said, "I was staying with a friend."</i>	Past Perfect Progressive <i>She said (that) she had been staying with a friend.</i>
	Present Perfect Progressive	<i>She said, "I have been staying with a friend."</i>	
Modal verbs	will	<i>She said, "I'll call you."</i>	would <i>She said (that) she would call me.</i>
	can	<i>He said, "I can run very fast."</i>	could <i>He said (that) he could run very fast.</i>
	may	<i>They said, "We may go on holiday."</i>	might <i>They said (that) they might go on holiday.</i>
	must	<i>She said, "I must get up early every day."</i> <i>He said, "You must be tired."</i>	had to (obligation) must (deduction) <i>She said (that) she had to get up early every day.</i> <i>He said (that) I must be tired.</i>
	must not	<i>She said, "You mustn't smoke."</i>	must not (prohibition) <i>She said (that) I/we mustn't smoke.</i>
	need	<i>She said, "I need to go shopping."</i>	needed/had to <i>She said (that) she needed/had to go shopping.</i>
	needn't	<i>He said, "I needn't hurry."</i> <i>She said, "You needn't pick me up tomorrow."</i>	needn't/didn't have to (present) wouldn't have to (future) <i>He said (that) he didn't have to hurry.</i> <i>She told me (that) I wouldn't have to pick her up the following day.</i>

▶ **would, could, might, should, ought to** do not change in Reported Speech.

	Direct Speech	Reported Speech
Time Expressions	now today/tonight yesterday tomorrow last week (month, etc.) next week (month, etc.) ago	then that day/that night the day before/the previous day the next/following day the previous week (month, etc.)/the week (month, etc.) before the following week (month, etc.) before
Other changes	this/these here pronouns /possessive adjectives	that/those there they change according to the context

note

No changes are made in the following cases:

- When the reporting verb is in the Present, Future or Present Perfect tense.
He says, "I'll be a lawyer when I grow up." → He says (that) he will be a lawyer when he grows up.
- when the sentence expresses a general truth or something that is unlikely to change.
She said, "The days are longer in the summer." → She said (that) the days are longer in the summer.
She said, "I prefer coffee to tea." → She said (that) she prefers coffee to tea.
- The Past Perfect (Simple and Progressive) does not change in Reported Speech.
She said, "I had prepared dinner in advance." → She said (that) she had prepared dinner in advance.
- The Past Progressive does not usually change; Past tenses **in time clauses** do not change.
"I was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang," she said. → She said (that) she was speaking on the phone when the doorbell rang.
- When something is reported immediately after it is said.
"This dress looks awful," Mary said. → Mary said (that) this dress looks awful.
- The Past Simple in colloquial speech can either change or remain the same.
"I got my school report yesterday," said Jim. → Jim said (that) he got/had got his school report the day before.
- When something, although said earlier, will take place in the future.
John said, "I'm flying to Rome tomorrow." → John said (that) he is flying to Rome tomorrow. (It is still today.)
- When there is a Conditional (Type 2 or 3) or a sentence with wish/If only.
Peter said, "If I were rich, I would travel a lot." → Peter said (that) if he were rich, he would travel a lot.
Karen said, "If I hadn't woken up late, I wouldn't have missed the bus." → Karen said (that) if she hadn't woken up late, she wouldn't have missed the bus.
Susan said, "I wish I knew his name." → Susan said (that) she wished she knew his name.

Reported Questions

Reported Questions are introduced with the verbs **ask, inquire, wonder, want to know**, etc. The auxiliaries **do, does, did** and question marks are not used. The word order is the same as in statements and the tenses change according to the rules.

Type	Form	Examples
Yes-No questions	ask wonder, etc.] + if/whether + subject + verb	"Do you speak German?" → She wondered if I spoke German.
Wh-questions	ask wonder, etc.] + question word + subject + verb	"Where do you live?" → She wanted to know where I lived.

note

- ▶ **Whether** often indicates uncertainty or doubt. It is used when there is a choice between two alternatives.
He wondered whether I had posted the letter or not.
- ▶ **Question Tags** are omitted in Reported Speech.
"They haven't arrived yet, have they?" he said. → He asked if/whether they had arrived yet.

Commands — Requests — Advice

To report commands, requests, advice, warnings or suggestions, we use the verbs **tell, ask, beg, order, command, advise, forbid, warn, encourage, etc. + (object) + full infinitive**

The flight attendant said, "Please return to your seats and fasten your seat belts." → The flight attendant asked us to return to our seats and fasten our seat belts.

"Don't talk so fast," he said. → He advised me not to talk so fast.

Other Reporting Verbs

- **refuse/offer/promise (+ object)/threaten (+ object)/claim/agree, etc. + full infinitive**
"I'll pick you up from the airport," he said. → He offered to pick me up from the airport.
- **accuse sb of/complain to sb about/insist on/admit (to)/deny/apologise for + -ing form**
Susan said, "He stole the old woman's handbag." → Susan accused him of stealing the old woman's handbag.
"I didn't write anything on the desk," he said. → He denied writing/having written anything on the desk.
- **complain/explain/agree/claim/deny** **+ that-clause**
promise/theaten/warn + (object) **+ that-clause**
"My coffee is too cold," she said. → She complained that her coffee was too cold.

note

"Let's go for a swim," Peter said. → Peter suggested going for a swim.
 that they should go for a swim.
 that they go/went for a swim.

Grammar Practice

A A dentist advises her patient on her problem. Rewrite the dialogue in Reported Speech.

Mrs Kent: My gums are very sore. Yesterday, as I was brushing my teeth, I noticed that my gums were bleeding! Is there anything wrong with them? How can I stop the bleeding? What should I do?

Dentist: Firstly, don't panic. If you take my advice, you won't have any problems. Buy a soft toothbrush and brush your teeth twice a day to keep your gums healthy. I'll make an appointment for you next week, so that I can remove the plaque that has built up and is causing you problems.

Mrs Kent said that her gums were very sore. She explained that the day before/the previous day, as she was brushing her teeth, she noticed that her gums were bleeding. She asked the dentist if there was anything wrong with them and how she could stop the bleeding. She wanted to know what she should do.

The dentist told her not to panic. He said that if she took his advice, she wouldn't have any problems. He advised her to buy a soft toothbrush and to brush her teeth twice a day to keep her gums healthy. He said that he would make an appointment for her the following week, so that he could remove the plaque that had built up and was causing her problems.

B Change the following sentences into Reported Speech. Use one of the reporting verbs given below.

advise
promise

suggest
inquire

warn
agree

threaten
apologise

complain
refuse

1. "Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?" Mrs Stone said.
Mrs Stone suggested inviting/that they invite(d)/that they should invite Jane to dinner that night.
2. "Where is Mount Everest?" asked a student.
A student inquired where Mount Everest was.
3. "If you scream, I'll shoot," said the robber to the girl.
The robber threatened the girl that he would shoot her if she screamed. **or** The robber threatened to shoot the girl if she screamed.
4. "I have been standing in this queue for two hours!" said the man.
The man complained about standing/that he had been standing in that queue for two hours.
5. "You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mrs Bent," said the doctor.
The doctor advised Mrs Bent to stay in the shade and wear a hat.
6. "You'll burn yourself, Tom, if you keep playing with matches," said his father.
Tom's father warned Tom that he would burn himself if he kept playing with matches.
7. "I'm really sorry that I woke you up this morning, Harry," said Chris.
Chris apologised to Harry for waking him up that morning.
8. "I think you're right, Tracey. We ought to let the others know," said Kerry.
Kerry agreed with Tracey to let/that they ought to let the others know.
9. "I'll definitely pay you back by the end of the week, Mum," said Sue.
Sue promised her mum that she would definitely pay her back by the end of the week. **or** Sue promised to pay back her mum by the end of the week.
10. "I will not let you borrow my car tomorrow, Graham," said Michael.
Michael refused to let Graham borrow his car the next/the following day.

C Rewrite using Direct Speech.

Sandra told Marie that she had been trying to call the university for the last hour but the line had been engaged.

Marie inquired what Sandra wanted to ask them.

Sandra answered that they had sent out her results the week before but that she hadn't received them yet.

Marie asked Sandra whether she knew that the post office had been on strike for the past week.

She replied that she hadn't known. She explained that if only she had known, then she wouldn't have wasted so much time on the phone.

Sandra: I've been trying to call the university for the last hour but the line has been engaged.

Marie: What do you want to ask them?

Sandra: They sent out my results last week but I haven't received them yet.

Marie: Did you know that the post office has been on strike for the past week?

Sandra: No, I didn't know. If only I had known, then I wouldn't have wasted so much time on the phone.

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- "I must have this document translated into French," said Robert.
had Robert said that he had to have that document translated into French.
- "You really must let me pay for the meal," said Jane.
insisted Jane insisted on paying for the meal.
- "Leave me alone," Tony said to us.
told Tony told us to leave him alone.
- "I rang you last night, Julie," said Brian.
rung Brian explained to Julie that he had rung her the previous night.
- "You needn't move to England next year," they told me.
would I was told that I would not have to move to England the following year.
- "How much does it cost to go to Rome by plane?" he asked himself.
wondered He wondered how much it cost to go to Rome by plane.
- "Are you working today, Peter?" she asked.
whether She wanted to know whether Peter was working that day.
- "Don't bring your dog into the shop," the shop owner said to Mary.
forbade The shop owner forbade Mary to bring her dog into the shop.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

throw away: get rid of sth you don't want
throw out: (1) force sb out of a place or group (2) get rid of sth you don't want
tidy up: make a place neat
try on: put on clothes to see if they fit you or if they look nice
try out: test sth in order to see how effective or useful it is

- Tidy up this room! It's a complete mess!
- Could we try out the bike before we buy it?
- He ate the last biscuit and threw away/out the packet.
- Would you like to try on this dress? The dressing room is over there.
- He was thrown out of the pub for starting a fight.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

on time: not late, at the expected or scheduled time
on the way: in the course of a journey
out of breath: breathing very quickly and with difficulty because you've been doing sth energetic
out of control: uncontrolled, unrestrained
out of danger: safe, no longer likely to be harmed
out of fashion: old-fashioned, no longer popular
out of luck: unlucky
out of order: broken, not working, not functioning properly
out of reach: impossible to have, get or accomplish
out of sight: sth that you cannot see
out of work: unemployed

- Medicine should be kept out of reach of children.
- It seems we're out of luck. The last tickets were sold to the couple in front of us.
- The fire was out of control because of the high winds.
- Don't worry, she usually arrives at meetings on time.
- It's depressing being out of work. There's nothing to do and no money to spend.
- We'll stop on the way to their house and buy a bottle of wine.
- Why are you out of breath? Have you been running?
- I watched the train leave until it was out of sight.
- I couldn't call you because my telephone was out of order.
- Nowadays people can wear whatever they like. Hardly anything is out of fashion.
- Fortunately, it was announced that all the injured people from the accident were out of danger.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

CLIMBING UP THE STARS!

The highest mountain in the world is Mount Everest, 8 848m high. Many adventurous climbers have risked their lives climbing it. More than 140 people have died, some in their attempt to reach the peak, and others who were unfortunate in their return trip from the top. Being confident is not enough for this trip. You should be fit, skilled and you must take the proper supplies with you. This could mean the difference between life and death. Nevertheless, such an operation is full of danger. Rarely does a climber return from Mount Everest without needing medical attention. Some come down, with fingers or toes so frozen that they clink like glass. But what is it that makes people risk their lives or take the punishment Mt Everest imposes on them? Why is it that even the death of fellow climbers doesn't discourage them? Understanding climbers' reasons may be difficult. Perhaps it's the thrill of standing on the peak of the highest mountain, the place on earth that's the closest to the stars.

ADVENTURE
FORTUNE
CONFIDE
SUPPLY
OPERATE
MEDICINE
FREEZE
PUNISH
COURAGE
UNDERSTAND

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bake (v): cook in an oven (e.g. cake)
boil (v): cook in boiling water
grill (v): cook using strong heat directly above or below the food
roast (v): cook food by dry heat in an oven or over a fire
fry (v): cook food in a pan with very hot oil or fat

spread (v): apply on a surface as a coating
spill (v): accidentally cause sth (usually liquid) to flow on a surface
drop (v): cause sth to fall on the ground
flood (v): make or become covered with water

debate (n): (formal) discussion about a subject on which people have different and often opposing opinions
discussion (n): when people talk about an issue in order to reach a decision
dialogue (n): (1) communication or discussion between people or groups of people
(2) conversation between two people in a book, film or play
interview (n): (1) formal meeting at which sb is asked questions in order to find out if they are suitable for a job or course of study
(2) conversation between a journalist and a famous person

1. Add the pasta when the water has boiled.
2. I always fry my eggs with lots of oil.
3. Bake the cake for 50 minutes.
4. Let's grill the chops on the barbecue.
5. Roast the chicken with potatoes in the oven.
6. Tom dropped the vase and it broke.
7. I always spread butter on my bread.
8. The children forgot to turn the tap off and the whole kitchen flooded.
9. Oh no! You've spilt/spilled the milk on the table.
10. My interview with the personnel manager went well. I might get the job after all.
11. The dialogue in the comedy was very unnatural.
12. The presidential candidates are going to have a live debate on television.
13. The members of the school council are going to have a discussion tomorrow about how to solve the problem.

19 Question Forms

A. Yes/No Questions

These questions may be answered simply with a **Yes** or **No**.

Formation	Examples
auxiliary verb modal verb be/have	<i>He lives in Manchester. → Does he live in Manchester?</i> <i>I can swim well. → Can you swim well?</i> <i>He is an accountant. → Is he an accountant?</i>
+ subject + main verb	

note

- ▶ **Yes/No** questions can receive short answers, that is Yes/No + subject + auxiliary (positive or negative). *Is he looking for a new job? Yes, he is.*
- ▶ Other ways of answering **Yes / No** questions in short:

I expect so / I don't expect so / I expect not	I think so / I don't think so
I suppose so / I don't suppose so / I suppose not	I hope so / I hope not
I imagine so / I don't imagine so / I imagine not	I guess so / I guess not
	I'm afraid so / I'm afraid not

absolutely (not), certainly (not), definitely (not), of course (not)

Can the children play in the garden? Certainly. / I guess so. / I'm afraid they can't. / I'm afraid not.

B. Wh-Questions

Questions beginning with the words: **who, which, whose, what, why, when, where** and **how** ask for specific information.

Formation	Examples
question word auxiliary verb/ modal verb question word + be/have + subject	<i>What are you looking for?</i> <i>When must you leave?</i> <i>Where are they?</i>
+ subject + verb	

note

- Prepositions are usually placed at the end of a question. e.g. *What did he talk about?*
 In formal English, prepositions can appear before the question word. e.g. *About what did he talk?*

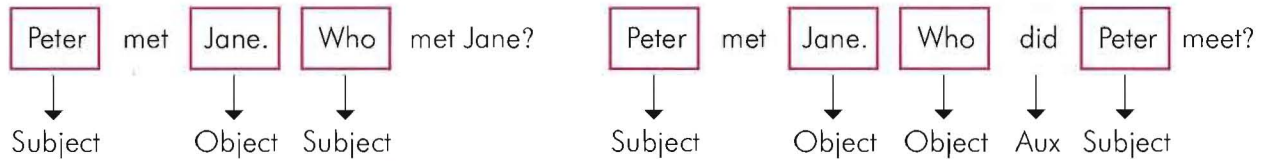
Question Word	We ask about:	Examples
Who	people (subject or object)	<i>Who is your best friend?</i> <i>Who are you talking to?</i>
Whom	people (object), in formal English or after prepositions	<i>Who(m) did you meet yesterday?</i> <i>To whom has she been talking?</i>
Which	people or things (limited choice)	<i>Which students will participate in the survey?</i> <i>Which of these sweaters do you like best?</i>
Whose	possession	<i>Whose are these boots? Whose boots are these?</i>
What	things (unlimited choice), actions and activities	<i>What did you buy?</i> <i>What happened?</i>
What...like?	general descriptions	<i>What is your brother like?</i>
What type/sort kind of...?	specific information	<i>What sort of cars do you like driving?</i>
What time/size, etc...?		<i>What height are we flying at?</i>
What...for?		<i>What do you need this for?</i>
Why	reason, purpose	<i>Why did he sell his car?</i>
When	time	<i>When are they coming?</i>

Where	place	<i>Where is your office?</i>
How	manner / the way something is done	<i>How did they behave?</i>
How + adjective/adverb	specific information	<i>How did you fix this?</i>
How much/many	quantity	<i>How deep is this river?</i>
How + be	someone's health	<i>How long does it take to fly to London?</i> <i>How much coffee is left?</i> <i>How is your brother?</i>

note

Who, what and **which** may ask about the subject or the object of a sentence.

- Questions about the subject do not take an auxiliary verb.
- Questions about the object take an auxiliary verb.



C. Negative Questions

Negative questions are formed with a negative auxiliary in the short form, e.g. *Aren't you Bill's brother?*

Negative questions are used:	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • to express emotions (surprise, anger, annoyance, disappointment, shock, etc.). • when a positive answer is expected. • to make sure that some information is correct. • in exclamations. 	<i>Hasn't he finished his report yet?</i> <i>Can't you drive? I thought you could.</i> <i>It's past midnight. Shouldn't you be in bed? (Obviously yes)</i> <i>Doesn't she live in Paris?</i> <i>Wasn't it a wonderful play?</i>

note

- ▶ If there are two auxiliary verbs, the first one is in the negative form.
Haven't you been watching the news?
- ▶ We may use the full form of **not** in negative questions for emphasis or in formal speech.
Has he not signed the contract yet?

D. Question Tags

Question tags are short questions placed at the end of a statement.

Formation	Examples
Auxiliary/Modal Verb + Subject Pronoun	<i>You can drive a car, can't you?</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the statement is positive, the question tag is negative. • If the statement is negative, the question tag is positive. 	<i>He is coming to the party, isn't he?</i> <i>You didn't forget to buy bread, did you?</i> <i>She hardly noticed anything, did she?</i>

note

- Question tags are asked:
- with rising intonation (↗), when we are not sure about some information and are asking for confirmation.
You have a driving licence, don't you (↗)? Yes, I do.
 - with falling intonation (↘), when we are sure about the information and expect the listener to agree.
It's quite cold today, isn't it (↘)? Yes, it is.

I am your best friend, aren't I ?	There's no reason for him to come over, is there ?
Let's go dancing tonight, shall we ?	They've got two children, haven't they ?
Let me give you a hand, will/won't you ?	She has breakfast every morning, doesn't she ?
Leave the window open, will/can/would/could you ?	Everyone agreed with his proposal, didn't they ?
Don't forget to buy some groceries, will you ?	Somebody must take care of the situation, mustn't they ?
This/That is an amazing story, isn't it ?	No one would ever trust him, would they ?
Nothing is wrong, is it ?	

E. Indirect Questions

Indirect questions begin with phrases such as **Can/Could you tell me...? Do you know...? Can you remember...? Can/Could you explain...? Have you any idea...?** etc. They are used mostly when we ask for information.

Formation	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • introductory phrase + question word + subject + verb when the direct question begins with a question word 	<i>Where is the National Gallery? →</i> <i>Could you tell me where the National Gallery is?</i>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • introductory phrase + if/whether + subject + verb when the direct question does not include a question word 	<i>Was the flight delayed? →</i> <i>Do you know if the flight was delayed?</i>

note

The auxiliaries **do, does** and **did** are never used in indirect questions.
Does he play golf regularly? → Do you know if he plays golf regularly?

Grammar Practice

A Write questions. The answers are the words in bold type.

- Which jumper suits me better, the red or the blue one?
The **red** jumper suits you better than the blue one.
- Did the basketball player sign the contract?
I'm afraid not. The basketball player didn't sign the contract.
- What does the price include?
The price includes **two meals at the hotel restaurant**, so it's convenient.
- How did she feel when she fell?
She felt **embarrassed** when she fell, as most of her guests were around.
- Does the library open at 9:00 a.m. every weekday?
Yes, the library opens at 9:00 a.m. every weekday.
- Where will Professor Burns give his lecture?
Professor Burns will give his lecture **at the Palace Hotel**.
- Why are you buying a computer?
I'm buying a computer **because I need it for my job**.
- Who persuaded Jane to give up smoking?
Paula persuaded Jane to give up smoking. Isn't it great?
- What is your new house like?
My new house **is big and has a garden at the front**.
- Can I go to the beach with my friends?
I **suppose** you can go to the beach with your friends.

B Use the words in brackets to make negative questions.

- "Last year the children organised a bazaar to raise money for the hospital.
Wasn't it a great idea ? (it/be/a great idea)" "Yes, I think they should do it again."
- "I bought a new jacket today but the sleeve is torn!"
 " Shouldn't you take it back ? (you/should/take/it/back)" "Yes, I will. I'll ask for another one."
- " Isn't the Town Hall just around the corner ? (the Town Hall/be/just around the corner)" "Yes, that's right."
- "You've ruined my jumper by spilling coffee on it and last week you spilt bleach on my jeans.
Can't you do anything right ? (you/can/do/anything right)"
- "You haven't bought any bread. " Didn't you go to the baker's ? (you/go/to the baker's)"
 "No, I went to the supermarket but completely forgot to get some bread."

C Complete using question tags.

Tanya: ... and the animal rights group I'm in is holding a demonstration outside one of the research laboratories.

Brett: Do you think that's really necessary? I mean, there's a need for these experiments, isn't there ?

Let's consider the advantages of these experiments, shall we ? Scientists must test new medical treatment somehow, mustn't they ? With these tests they can see how effective and safe the treatments are. Everyone wants new vaccines and safer drugs, don't they ?

Tanya: I see your point, but scientists don't really care about the animals, do they ? Are you aware that thousands of animals die every year as a result of these experiments? Scientists should find another way of testing their discoveries, shouldn't they ?

D Make Indirect Questions using the phrases, *Can/Could you tell me...?, Can/Could you explain...?, Do you know...?, Have you any idea...?, Can you remember...?*

- How do you operate this video? ...how you operate this video?
- Who directed this film? ...who directed this film?
- Has the Moore family moved to their new house? ...if the Moore family has moved to their new house?
- When is their wedding anniversary? ...when their wedding anniversary is?
- Did we invite John to our party? ...if we invited John to our party?
- Was the trip postponed? ...if the trip was postponed?
- Whose is the luggage in the living room? ...whose the luggage in the living room is?
- Where should I get my eyes tested? ...where I should get my eyes tested?
- What time did you set your alarm clock for? ...what time you set your alarm clock for?
- Are you working this weekend? ...if you are working this weekend?

E Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- What was the price of the ticket?
pay How much did you pay for the ticket?
- Whose car is this?
belong Who does this car belong to?
- The film was interesting, wasn't it?
boring The film wasn't boring, was it?
- How did the fire start, sir?
explain Could you explain how the fire started, sir?
- Mr Wesley, what caused you to resign so suddenly?
why Mr Wesley, why did you resign so suddenly?
- Can you tell me Tom's address, Kelly?
lives Can you tell me where Tom lives, Kelly?
- What's the distance from the village to the beach?
it How far is it from the village to the beach?
- Should I inform our clients about the change of plans?
whether I'd like to know whether I should inform our clients about the change of plans.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

ring up:	telephone
run along:	go away
run away:	leave from a place that makes you unhappy, escape
run into:	meet sb unexpectedly
run out (of):	have no more of sth left
run over:	knock down a person or animal with a vehicle

1. Michael ran away from his boarding school because he thought it was too strict.
2. I can't start the car because I've run out of petrol.
3. Peter, run along now and play with the other children.
4. I rang up the restaurant and made a reservation.
5. You'll never believe who I ran into the other day.
6. I accidentally ran over a cat as I was parking my car.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

off duty:	not working
off school/work:	away from school or not working because you are ill
on behalf of:	as a representative of sb
on business:	in another place, working
on the contrary:	(1) not at all (2) quite the reverse
on a diet:	not eating very much because you are trying to lose weight
on duty:	working
on an excursion/ a journey/ a tour/a trip, etc.:	away for these reasons
on fire:	burning
on foot:	walking

1. If you are on a diet, you should avoid eating fatty foods and sugar.
2. Sue doesn't take the bus to school. She goes on foot.
3. We are planning to go on a trip/on an excursion to Bath next weekend. Would you like to join us?
4. Police officers don't carry their guns when they are off duty.
5. I'm going to give a talk on behalf of Greenpeace.
6. Extra staff were called on duty at the hospital after the terrible earthquake.
7. I don't believe you; on the contrary, I believe Bill.
8. Kim is in Brazil on business this week. Her job requires her to meet overseas clients.
9. You aren't feeling well and you've got a temperature! Take a few days off work. I'm sure your boss will understand.
10. Call the fire brigade. The neighbour's house is on fire.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

SOME GUYS HAVE ALL THE LUCK!

It is thought that some people are just born lucky. They seem to have everything, from the perfect family to the best employment at the most successful company in town. Their good fortune causes jealousy in less fortunate people, who do all sorts of things to bring luck into their lives.

LUCK
EMPLOY
JEALOUS

Some people carry good luck charms, such as blue stones and horseshoes on a daily basis, to make sure that they will stay healthy, safe and free from injury/ies. Also, some otherwise logical people go through superstitious actions like touching wood in order to bring themselves good luck.

DAY
HEALTH, INJURE
LOGIC

But is there really any relation/relationship between all these things and success in life? Many people consider good luck charms foolish and unreasonable. They believe that success in life comes through working hard.

RELATE
FOOL, REASON

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bundle (n): a number of things wrapped or tied together in order to be carried

heap (n): pile of things arranged in an untidy way

pile (n): a quantity of things arranged neatly one on top of the other

bunch (n): a number of similar things fastened, growing or grouped together (grapes, keys, etc.)

pack (n): a collection of things packed together (in a bag or packet)
(v) put your belongings into a bag because you're leaving a place or going on holiday

packet (n): small container made of thin cardboard, paper or plastic, in which items of the same kind are sold (biscuits, cigarettes, etc.)

package (n): small parcel

parcel (n): sth wrapped up in paper, usually to be given or sent to sb by post

wrap (v): fold paper or cloth around sth in order to cover it completely

fasten (v): do sth up by means of buttons, straps, buckles or other devices

tie (v): fasten with a string or rope, making a knot

fold (v): bend sth so that one part covers another

1. His room is very untidy; his clothes are all thrown in a heap in a corner.
2. I bought my mother a bunch of flowers on Mother's Day.
3. Kerry keeps her old magazines tied up in bundles/piles in the attic.
4. I want you to arrange these folders in alphabetical order and put them in a neat pile on my desk.
5. Could you get me a packet of crisps?
6. I'd like to send this parcel/package to Africa. How much will it cost?
7. Simon is busy packing his clothes for the trip.
8. Little John is learning to tie his shoelaces.
9. Please fasten your seat belts.
10. Could you wrap this for me? It's a gift.
11. Would you fold these sheets for me and put them in the bottom drawer?



A. Relative Clauses

Relative clauses are introduced by **relative pronouns** (who, whose, whom, which, that) or **relative adverbs** (when, where, why).

Relative Pronouns	For people	For animals/things
who, that, which (subject of the verb- cannot be omitted)	who/that <i>I saw a boy. He could ride his bike without using his hands. → I saw a boy who could ride his bike without using his hands.</i>	which/that <i>He has written a book. It is about the history of education. → He has written a book which is about the history of education.</i>
who, whom, that, which (object of the verb- can be omitted)	who/whom/that <i>He liked the girl. He met her at the party yesterday. → He liked the girl (who/whom/that) he met at the party yesterday.</i> Whom is used in formal speech or after prepositions.	which/that <i>That hat looks old-fashioned. She bought it recently. → The hat (which/that) she bought recently looks old-fashioned.</i>
whose, of which (possession-cannot be omitted)	whose <i>I know the writer. His latest novel was a great success. → I know the writer whose latest novel was a great success.</i>	whose/of which <i>I have a car. Its engine is noisy. → I have a car whose engine/the engine of which is noisy.</i>

note

- ▶ Prepositions normally go **after** relative pronouns. In formal speech, prepositions can go before **whom** and **which** only (not before who/that/whose).
The bed (that/which) I slept in last night was very soft. (usual)
The bed in which I slept last night was very soft. (formal)
- ▶ **Expressions of quantity** (some of, many of, a few of, most of, half of, neither of, none of, a number of, etc.) can be followed by whom/which/whose.
Our company has 80 employees, most of whom are computer literate.
- ▶ **Which** sometimes refers to a whole sentence and cannot be omitted.
The lift was out of order and this was very inconvenient. →
The lift was out of order, which was very inconvenient.

Relative adverbs	Use	Examples
when (can sometimes be omitted)	Time	<i>I'll never forget the day (when) I first met him.</i>
where	Place	<i>The village where I grew up is very small.</i>
why (can sometimes be omitted)	Reason	<i>The reason (why) he left was that he felt disappointed.</i>

note

- ▶ **That** can be used instead of **when**.
I'll never forget the summer when / that we went to Nice.
- ▶ **In/on/at which** can be used instead of **when** and **where**. **Where** can be omitted or substituted by **that** if the verb is followed by a preposition.
We stayed at a rather cheap hotel. →
The hotel where / at which we stayed was rather cheap. or
The hotel (that) we stayed at was rather cheap.

note

Defining and non-defining relative clauses

- **Defining relative clauses** provide information which is essential to the meaning of the sentence. No commas are used.
Students who cheat should be punished.
- **Non-defining relative clauses** provide additional information (not essential to the meaning of the sentence). They are put between commas. The relative pronouns cannot be omitted; neither can we use **that** instead of them.
Dr Miller, who is the Head of the Department, will attend the reception.

B. Clauses of Time

Clauses of time are introduced by: **when, as, while, as soon as, before, after, until, till, by the time, just as, since, the moment (that), whenever, every time**, etc. They can go before the main clause (separated by a comma) or after the main clause (no comma is required).

As soon as the fire alarm went off, everyone left the building.

Everyone left the building as soon as the fire alarm went off.

Sequence of tenses

Main clause	Time clause	Examples
present / future	present	<i>I'll wait until the rain stops.</i>
past	past	<i>I waited until the rain stopped.</i>

Time conjunctions

Conjunctions	Use	Examples
when as while	• for two events happening at the same time	<i>He dropped his shopping bag as he was running to catch the bus.</i>
just (as)	• for two short actions happening at the same time	<i>Just as we got to the beach, it started to rain.</i>
when as soon as before after	• for events taking place one after the other	<i>They may go out after they finish/have finished their homework. He left before I could explain anything.</i>
by the time	• meaning "not later than"	<i>I will have finished my work by the time you arrive (=no later than the time you arrive).</i>
until, till	• meaning "up to a certain time"	<i>I won't leave until I have finished everything.</i>

Grammar Practice**A Complete using who, whose, which, that, where, why or -.**

Sherlock Holmes, whose name is well-known, didn't really exist. However, for many who/that have read his adventures, he might as well have been a real person.

The man who/that created Holmes was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Edinburgh in 1859. He trained as a doctor, but found he could earn more money by writing than by practising medicine. He wrote not only stories about Holmes, but many other books which/that/— people also liked. However, it is for the detective stories which/that/— he wrote that he is best remembered.

The place where the Holmes mysteries are set is Victorian England. Holmes, who is a brilliant

detective, uses his intelligence and scientific knowledge to solve the mysteries.

Even though Doyle wrote many Holmes mysteries, we'll never know the reason why/— he gave us so little information about Holmes' private life. All the books were written in the first person, not by Holmes, but by his assistant, Dr Watson, whose knowledge of his master's private life was limited.

B Join the sentences using relative pronouns or adverbs. Omit them where possible.

1. The journalist will interview the old man. His house was broken into last night.

The journalist will interview the old man whose house was broken into last night.

2. I remembered the man. I had seen him at the concert.

I remembered the man who/whom/that/- I had seen at the concert.

3. We visited the town. We were born there.

We visited the town where/in which we were born. or We visited the town that/- we were born in.

4. Bill and Jane haven't been talking to each other for days. There must be a reason.

There must be a reason why Bill and Jane haven't been talking to each other for days.

5. People believe that the old building should be pulled down. The old building is on Park Street.

People believe that the old building which/that is on Park Street should be pulled down.

6. She got up late and missed the boat. That was quite foolish of her.

She got up late and missed the boat, which was quite foolish of her.

7. I invited Mrs Kansas to my party. She lives next door.

I invited Mrs Kansas, who lives next door, to my party.

8. We must arrange a time. Then we can discuss the problem.

We must arrange a time when we can discuss the problem.

C Choose the correct answers.

_____ (1) we hear Walt Disney's name, we immediately think of the huge company which produces the world's most popular cartoon characters. This is Disney's story.

1. a. While b. Whenever c. Just

Walt Disney was born in 1901. _____ (2) he was growing up on a farm in Missouri, he became interested in sketching. He drew sketches of the animals living on the farm.

2. a. As b. As soon as c. Once

He attended an art school _____ (3) he was fourteen for a short period of time. _____ (4) the war ended, he worked at a commercial art studio in Kansas City, where he met Ub Iwerks in 1919. They worked together _____ (5) Iwerks died. Together they began making advertisements, but it wasn't long _____ (6) they began creating and selling their own cartoons. The success of these cartoons was what made Disney decide to start his own cartoon production company in 1923.

3. a. as b. when c. just
4. a. By the time b. Every time c. After

It was in 1928 that his most famous character was created—Mickey Mouse. _____ (7) the character appeared, it became very popular.

5. a. since b. when c. until
6. a. before b. after c. once

7. a. The sooner b. Before c. The moment

_____ (8) Disney created other popular characters such as Minnie Mouse, Donald Duck, Goofy and Pluto, sound and colour had been added to animation.

8. a. Until **b.** By the time c. Since

_____ (9) this had happened, the cartoons became truly magical.

9. **a.** Once b. Whenever c. Till

By the mid 30s, Disney was very successful and his organisation had grown into a "factory" of men and women. _____ (10) he continued making

10. **a.** While b. The moment c. When

cartoons, he also began making feature length cartoon movies, such as Snow White and The Seven Dwarfs, which proved to be successful _____ (11) it was released.

11. a. by the time **b.** as soon as c. until

Disneyland in California opened in 1955, Disneyworld in Florida in 1971 and Eurodisney in Paris in 1991.

_____ (12) a child enters these amusement parks, they enter an enchanted world where anything and everything is possible. _____ (13) there are children and adults young at heart, these parks will remain open. Disney died in 1966. Since then, the company has continued to produce animated films which still keep the Disney name the most popular in children's entertainment.

12. a. While b. As long as **c.** Every time

13. **a.** As long as b. Until c. As soon as

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. I hadn't heard from Robert for years and yesterday I received a letter from him.

who Yesterday I received a letter from Robert who I hadn't heard from for years.

2. Chris, everyone will be asleep when you come.

time Chris, by the time you come, everyone will be asleep.

3. In 1986 they gave their first concert in Europe.

was 1986 was the year when/in which/— they gave their first concert in Europe.

4. I spoke to a very helpful assistant manager last week.

whom The assistant manager to whom I spoke / whom I spoke to last week was very helpful.

5. We've interviewed all of the candidates but we haven't found anyone suitable for the job.

none We've interviewed all of the candidates, none of whom are/were suitable for the job.

6. During a walk in the forest Kelly was stung by a bee.

while Kelly was stung by a bee while walking/she was walking in the forest.

7. The shop where I used to work has closed down.

which The shop at which I used to work has closed down.

8. I went to two pay phones, but they were both out of order.

which I went to two pay phones, neither of which worked.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

save up: economise by spending less than you earn, usually for a purpose

sell out: sell all the stocks of sth, so that there is no more left for people to buy (goods, tickets, etc.)

set off: begin a journey

set out: (1) start a journey
(2) start doing sth

set up: (1) establish sth (home, business, organisation, etc.)
(2) make the necessary preparations for sth to start

1. I set out to do some gardening, but it started raining.
2. John had been saving up his pocket money for months to buy a bike.
3. Tickets for the concert were sold out in just one day!
4. We set off/out on our trip very early in the morning.
5. My parents helped me set up my own business.

B Complete using prepositions.



1. This closet is full of children's toys.
2. The children were covered with/in mud from head to toe.
3. The students were divided into two teams.
4. Does this bag belong to anyone here?
5. These beautifully-designed ornaments are made of silver.
6. The concert hall was crowded with screaming fans.
7. This game is very different to/from any other game I've played.
8. The taste of broccoli is similar to that of cauliflower.
9. According to the street directory, we'll find Queen St. straight ahead.
10. There's hardly any difference in taste between these two wines.
11. Keep these magazines separate from the newspapers.
12. Your drink consists of different types of fruit juices.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

NOT WRITTEN ON THE STARS

Lots of people read their horoscope for an insight into their character and for the predictions which are made. Graphologists claim that they too are able to understand a person's character-by examining their handwriting!

How big the letters, how straight the lines, the presence of loops and even your signature, can reveal something about your personality. For example, if your handwriting slants to the right, you have a cheerful nature. Writing with upward arches indicates that you are creative. A high t-bar means that the writer is imaginative and ambitious. But there is much more.

Apparently, there are about two-hundred and fifty signs which graphologists take into consideration when analysing a person's writing.

How accurate or how believable this is, is up to the individual to decide.

PREDICT

SIGN, PERSON

CHEER

CREATE

IMAGINE, AMBITION

APPARENT

CONSIDER

BELIEVE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

regard (v):	believe that sb or sth has a particular quality
think (v):	have an opinion or impression about sth
consider (v):	(1) think carefully about sth (2) have an opinion about sb or sth
suppose (v):	imagine that sth is probably true
imagine (v):	form an idea or picture of sth in your mind

learn (v):	obtain knowledge or a skill through studying or training
find out (v):	learn sth you didn't know, especially through deliberate effort
discover (v):	(1) become aware of sth you didn't know before (2) find sb or sth by chance or because you have been looking for them
invent (v):	create or make up sth for the first time
explore (v):	investigate sth (a place or scientific field) systematically in order to find out more facts about it
inspect (v):	examine sth carefully in order to check that it is all right

- Do you think/suppose I ought to talk to my boss about a raise?
- I want you to imagine this; miles of golden sand and a beautiful blue sea. Doesn't it sound great?
- Did you consider Mr Field's offer carefully?
- We regard you as one of our best employees.
- I saw Tom and Jill out together, so I suppose/think they are dating.
- Marconi invented the radio.
- Captain Cook discovered Australia in 1770.
- The Apollo programme was set up to explore outer space.
- The insurance company have to inspect my car before paying me for the damage caused by the accident.
- Craig has decided to attend classes in order to learn French.
- Did you find out whether you're working on Christmas Eve or not?

A. Clauses of Concession

Clauses of concession express contrast, opposition or unexpected results and are introduced by **although, even though, though, in spite of, despite, however, but, while, whereas, no matter how**, etc.

Structures	Examples
although even though though ▶ Even though is stronger than although . ▶ Though is more informal and can go at the end of a sentence, meaning "however".	<i>Although he has plenty of money, he doesn't spend much.</i> <i>Even though there was a lot of snow, no trains were delayed.</i> <i>She has a driving licence. She rarely drives, though.</i>
in spite of despite in spite of despite	<i>In spite of feeling ill, she came to work.</i> <i>Despite her beautiful voice, she never became a singer.</i> <i>He didn't show up despite the fact that we had an appointment.</i>
however no matter how ▶ However can also introduce a main clause.	<i>However hard she tries, she never manages to finish her work on time.</i> <i>Vicky eats a lot. However, she isn't overweight.</i>
whatever no matter what	<i>Nobody believes him any more, no matter what he says.</i>
adjective adverb ▶ A very emphatic and formal structure.	<i>Tired as/though she was, she offered to help us.</i>
but while/whereas ▶ Whereas is more formal than while .	<i>I like travelling by plane, while/whereas my husband doesn't.</i>

B. Clauses of Reason

Reason is expressed with the following structures:

Structures	Use	Examples
because + clause because of + noun/-ing form	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to answer a question with "why" 	<i>She couldn't get to work on time because the traffic was heavy / because of the heavy traffic.</i>
as since	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> usually at the beginning of a sentence 	<i>As the weather was fine, we decided to go for a swim.</i>
due to + noun/-ing form due to the fact + that-clause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> formal structure meaning "because (of)" 	<i>Due to a heavy snowstorm, all flights to Oslo were cancelled yesterday.</i>

note

If a clause of reason or concession comes before the main clause, they are separated by a **comma**.
Since you don't trust him, don't tell him anything.

But: *Don't tell him anything since you don't trust him.*

Although the soup was cold, he ate it.

But: *He ate the soup although it was cold.*

C. Clauses of Purpose

Purpose is expressed with the following structures:

Structures	Use	Examples
Infinitive	• informal structure	<i>I just called to invite you to a party.</i>
so as (not) to	• informal structures	<i>He walked in quietly so as not to wake up his parents.</i> <i>We are saving money in order to buy a new car.</i>
in order (not) to		
for + noun	• to express a person's intentions	<i>He went to the pub for a drink.</i>
for + -ing form	• to express the purpose or function of an item	<i>I use the electric knife for cutting meat.</i>
so that + can/may/will	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>Please close the door so that the cat can't come in.</i>
so that + could/might/would	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He walked quietly so that nobody could hear his footsteps.</i>
in case + present tense	• purpose with present or future time reference	<i>I'll take an umbrella in case it rains.</i>
in case + past tense	• purpose with past time reference	<i>He gave me his telephone number in case I wanted to call him.</i>
with a view to + -ing form with the aim of + -ing form	• formal structure	<i>He took evening courses in Marketing with the aim of getting more qualifications.</i>
for fear / lest + subject + might/should for fear of + noun/-ing form	• negative purpose	<i>He fled his country for fear he might be arrested.</i> <i>He fled his country for fear of being arrested.</i>

note

Clauses of purpose follow the rules of the sequence of tenses.

D. Clauses of Result

Clauses of result express a deduction or the result of an action and are introduced with: **so...that, such...that**, etc.

Structures	Examples			
such (a/an) + (adjective) + noun + that...	<i>He was such a wise man that everyone respected him.</i> <i>They were such nice people that everyone enjoyed their company.</i>			
such a lot of + noun + that...	<i>Their new car cost such a lot of money that I wondered how they could afford it.</i>			
so + adjective/adverb + that...	<i>The fog was so thick that we couldn't see across the street.</i>			
so + <table style="display: inline-table; vertical-align: middle; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;">much, many</td> <td rowspan="2" style="padding: 0 5px;">+ (noun) + that...</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px;">little, few</td> </tr> </table>	much, many	+ (noun) + that...	little, few	<i>He had made so many mistakes that he had to write his report again.</i>
much, many	+ (noun) + that...			
little, few				
so + adjective + a/an + noun + that...	<i>It was so boring a play that I nearly fell asleep.</i>			
(and) so, (and) therefore ► therefore is more formal than so	<i>He had the qualifications required, so he got the job.</i>			

Grammar Practice

A Make one sentence using the words in brackets.

Advertising Facts

Products are advertised mainly through the media. This way, consumers become familiar with the variety of products available. (so that)

Products are advertised mainly through the media so that consumers can/may/will become familiar with the variety of products available.

Large companies employ advertising agencies. They want to make their product attractive to consumers. (so as to)

Large companies employ advertising agencies so as to make their product attractive to consumers.

Companies spend millions of dollars on advertising. They want to increase their sales. (with the aim of)

Companies spend millions of dollars on advertising with the aim of increasing their sales.

Advertisers must consider their advertisements carefully. They can't afford to be accused of persuading people to buy things they don't need. (for fear of)

Advertisers must consider their advertisements carefully for fear of being accused of persuading people to buy things they don't need.

All advertisements are reviewed by a consumer protection agency. False information mustn't be given to the public. (in case)

All advertisements are reviewed by a consumer protection agency in case false information is given to the public.

B Read Martha's opinions. Continue the sentences using *so* or *such*.

Martha's film reviews - See them if you dare!

The film "Walk in the Sky" was boring. I left halfway through.

The film was so boring that I left halfway through.

It was such a boring film/so boring a film that I left halfway through.

"Adventures in the Pacific", an animated film, has many funny characters. Both young and old will love it.

The film has such a lot of/so many funny characters that both young and old will love it.

There are so many/such a lot of funny characters in the film that both young and old will love it.

The film "Tough" has a lot of violence. Many people will refuse to see it.

The film has such a lot of/so much violence that many people will refuse to see it.

There is so much/such a lot of violence in the film that many people will refuse to see it.

The thriller "Cold Blood" was very frightening. I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.

The film was so frightening that I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.

It was such a frightening film/so frightening a film that I was on the edge of my seat the whole time.

C Choose the correct answers.

a. _____ (1) I had set the alarm, it didn't go off, _____ (2) I was late for work. I've decided to go shopping today to buy a new alarm clock _____ (3) something like this happens again. I don't want to lose my job all _____ (4) of an alarm clock!

1. (a.) Although b. Because c. Despite
 2. a. since (b.) so c. because
 3. (a.) in case b. so as c. in order
 4. (a.) because b. due c. though

b. We have _____ (5) a lot of fun going on camping trips that we go at least twice a year. I've got all the necessary equipment, _____ (6) you can borrow _____ (7) you need. Just remember _____ (8) well you've planned the trip, expect the unexpected! Pack a first-aid kit, tins of food, bottles of water _____ (9) you'll be prepared for everything.

5. (a.) such b. so c. therefore
 6. (a.) therefore b. while c. whereas
 7. a. however (b.) whatever c. even though
 8. a. no matter b. because (c.) however
 9. a. in case (b.) so that c. so as



D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Whatever they try to do, the police will stop them.

no The police will stop them _____ no matter what they try _____ to do.

2. The road was slippery, so they couldn't drive fast.

because They couldn't drive fast _____ because of the slippery _____ road.

3. I've brought some extra blankets because it might get colder at night.

case I've brought some extra blankets _____ in case it gets colder _____ at night.

4. You know, I felt disappointed but I didn't give up trying.

spite You know, _____ in spite of feeling disappointed/my disappointment _____, I didn't give up trying.

5. She is very talented but she doesn't play the piano professionally.

though Talented _____ though she is _____, she doesn't play the piano professionally.

6. The children hid the cake they had made because they wanted to surprise their mother.

could The children hid the cake they had made _____ so that they could _____ surprise their mother.

7. Kate was too tired to do any housework.

so Kate was _____ so tired that she _____ couldn't do any housework.

8. Paul went out even though he wasn't feeling well.

fact Paul went out _____ despite the fact that he _____ wasn't feeling well.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

settle down: start living a quiet life in a place, especially after getting married or buying a house

sit up: take a sitting position after lying down or leaning back

stand by: (1) ready and waiting to provide help or take action
(2) provide loyal support to sb

stand out: be noticeable

stand up for: defend sb or sth and make your feelings or opinions clear

1. Red is used to signify danger because it stands out among other colours.
2. All emergency rescue teams were standing by to help take care of the survivors of the plane crash.
3. Chris is too young to get married and settle down. He's only 18!
4. Always stand up for your beliefs.
5. You're well enough to sit up today, but don't get out of bed.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.



on the one/other hand: from one point of view/from the opposite point of view

on holiday: on vacation, relaxing

on one's mind: in one's thoughts

on one's own: alone, without help

on the phone: having a telephone conversation

on purpose: deliberately, not by accident

on the radio/television: broadcast by radio or television stations

on sale: available to be bought in shops

on second thought(s): completely changing your mind about sth, reconsidering sth

on strike: refusing to work as a sign of protest

1. These diaries are on sale everywhere.
2. I was planning to go to the party but on second thoughts I won't, as I have to wake up early in the morning.
3. Can you please be quiet? I'm speaking on the phone.
4. The workers of this factory are on strike, demanding better working conditions.
5. There are too many commercials on television. It's so annoying when you're watching a good film.
6. We could always do the cooking for the party ourselves, but on the other hand/ on second thoughts it might be easier if we got a catering service to organise everything.
7. Did you really build this tree house on your own? That's great!
8. What's wrong? You look like you have a lot on your mind.
9. I'm sure he didn't do it on purpose. It must have been an accident.
10. I'm sorry but Mr Sullivan won't be able to help you. He's gone abroad on holiday for two weeks.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

HOME SWEET HOME

What will homes be like by the year 2050? What improvements will there be in the general standard of living?

Forget about entering the house with a key. Admittance will only be possible with a personal card.

It will be of no importance if you leave lights or heaters on when you go out. They will be automatically switched off.

The safety of your house will not be a problem. Protection against fire and intruders will be guaranteed.

Doing the shopping, going to the bank, talking and seeing people on the other side of the world without leaving home will all be possible due to the existence of 21st century technology.

Each home will have a central computer controlling all sorts of practical devices that will make life easier and more comfortable.

IMPROVE

ADMIT

PERSON

IMPORTANT

AUTOMATIC

SAFE, PROTECT

EXIST

CENTRE, PRACTICE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

encourage (v): give sb the confidence they need in order to do sth

support (v): (1) help, encourage
(2) agree with or approve of sb's ideas or plans

assist (v): help sb finish their work or task

aid (v): (1) help or assist sb
(2) provide a person, country or organisation with money, equipment or services they need

help (v): make it easier for sb to do sth, assist

save (v): help sb to avoid harm or to escape from a dangerous situation

rescue (v): get sb out of an unpleasant or dangerous situation

defend (v): take action in order to protect or support sb or sth

guard (v): watch over in order to protect or not allow to escape

manage (to) (v): (1) be responsible for a business or organisation
(2) succeed in coping with difficulties

control (v): have the power to manipulate sth or make important decisions about it

check (v): examine sth to make sure that it is correct, accurate or of good quality

1. The parties in parliament are prepared to support the new tax laws.

2. My parents always encourage me to do my best.

3. The profits of the concert will go to aid the hungry in Africa.

4. The nurse assisted/helped the doctor during the operation.

5. Could you help me get these curtains down?

6. There is an international campaign to save the whale from extinction.

7. The firemen rescued ten people from the burning building.

8. The National Bank is guarded by the police 24 hours a day.

9. Will you defend your country in time of war?

10. A computer controls the automatic doors at the airport.

11. How did you manage to get this old car running again?

12. Did you check the quality of the material?

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- “Do you have anything to declare?” asked the customs officer.
us The customs officer asked us if we had anything to declare.
- Rosie had lost a lot of weight, so I hardly recognised her.
much Rosie had lost so much weight that I hardly recognised her.
- You know, Mr Davidson was ill, so he couldn't go to work for a week.
illness Mr Davidson couldn't go to work for a week because of/due to his illness, you know.
- They live in a modern and spacious apartment.
where The apartment where they live is modern and spacious.
- I'll leave only after you apologise for what you said.
soon I'll leave as soon as you apologise for what you said.
- You know, although she was angry, she managed to speak calmly.
spite You know, in spite of being angry/her anger, she managed to speak calmly.
- “I'll inform you next Monday,” Sally said to Mike.
him Sally told Mike that she would inform him the following Monday.
- Sally regrets not having entered the competition.
wishes Sally wishes she had entered the competition.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- Don't use that machine. It's out of _____.
a. danger b. work c. control **d. order**
- I'm here _____ behalf of the workers.
a. for b. in **c. on** d. at
- This material is different _____ the one I bought yesterday.
a. for b. with c. of **d. to**
- The shop assistant offered to _____ the gift for me.
a. fasten b. fold **c. wrap** d. tie
- My parents bought two dogs to _____ our house.
a. defend b. support c. assist **d. guard**
- The rock star gave only one _____ when he was on tour.
a. interview b. discussion c. debate d. dialogue
- He was so startled by the dog that he _____ the shopping bags he was carrying.
a. spread b. flooded **c. dropped** d. spilt
- I've never been to a tropical island but I can _____ how beautiful it must be.
a. think b. suppose c. consider **d. imagine**
- The school _____ all the students to take an interest in the arts.
a. encouraged b. regarded c. supported d. managed
- When ironing, I like to put the clothes in neat _____.
a. packs **b. piles** c. bunches d. heaps
- How did you _____ to stop little Lisa from crying?
a. help b. control c. aid **d. manage**

12. As I was going home, I _____ that I had left my keys at the office.
 a. found out b. inspected **c. discovered** d. learnt
13. Whenever we go camping, we like to _____ the area for interesting plants and animals.
 a. discover b. find out **c. explore** d. learn
14. I need a _____ of sugar from the supermarket.
a. packet b. bundle c. package d. parcel
15. I _____ John Westwood yesterday! I hadn't seen him for ages!
 a. stood by **b. ran into** c. ran along d. settled down

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. Students are under **considerable** stress when studying for exams.
 2. It may seem **unbelievable**, but many people believe that UFOs exist.
 3. **Admittance/** to the concert is free for children under twelve.
 4. There was a(n) **misunderstanding** and as a result we failed to meet last night.
 5. Those papers are **unimportant**. Just throw them out.
 6. These dresses are Townsend's latest **creation(s)**.
 7. Children have a lot of **imagination**.
 8. We've made some **improvements** to our house.

CONSIDER
BELIEVE
ADMIT
UNDERSTAND
IMPORTANT
CREATE
IMAGINE
IMPROVE

C Choose the correct answers.

It was in 776 BC in Olympia that the first recorded Olympic Games were held. The Ancient Greeks (1) _____ the games (2) _____ order to honour their gods. Thus, many religious ceremonies as well as sporting events took place during the Games.

Taking part in the Games was considered a great honour, and athletes travelled long distances so (3) _____ to participate. If the city states (4) _____ at war, they did not cancel the Games. They simply (5) _____ their differences until the Games were over.

The Games were banned in 393 AD by Emperor Theodosius I, (6) _____ disapproved of false gods and festivals. However, they were revived in 1896, by Baron Pierre de Coubertin, who (7) _____ them as a representation of ideals that the modern world needed. He (8) _____ that they symbolised the idea of cooperation between nations, honour, fairness, and high moral and physical standards.

1. a. set off 3. **a.** as 5. a. put on 7. a. viewed
b. set up b. that b. put away b. supposed
 c. set out c. for **c.** put aside c. imagined
 d. set in d. though d. put out **d.** regarded
2. **a.** in 4. a. are 6. a. which 8. a. says
 b. on b. had been b. whose **b.** said
 c. at **c.** were c. whom c. has said
 d. for d. will be **d.** who d. is saying

22 Linking Words

The linking words listed below join either main clauses or parts of the same sentence (not a main with a subordinate clause).

Linking words	Use	Examples
and, both...and, or, either...or, neither...nor	• co-ordination	<i>He is both lazy and irresponsible. Neither your parents nor your teachers would approve of such bad behaviour.</i>
too, not only...but also, not only...but...as well, as well as, besides, in addition to this, furthermore, what is more	• to give additional information	<i>As well as losing his job, he lost most of his friends.</i>
but, however, nevertheless, on the other hand, regardless of, yet, contrary to, in contrast to, in comparison to	• to express contrast	<i>She cooks well but she hates washing up afterwards. She was not prepared for the test; however, she managed to pass it.</i>
in fact, as a matter of fact, actually, indeed, to tell you the truth, strangely enough	• for emphasis	<i>To tell you the truth, I didn't know that he was leaving. We had a very good time, indeed.</i>
like, as, likewise, similarly, in the same way ▶ like + noun/pronoun/-ing form = similar to as + subject + verb = similar to ▶ as + article + noun describes sb's job or the function of sth	• manner or comparison	<i>Exercising strengthens our body; likewise, eating more vegetables improves our health. He behaves like a real gentleman. We left everything as we found it. She works as a shop assistant. I used a folded blanket as a pillow.</i>
like, such as, for example, for instance, especially, particularly, in particular	• to give an example	<i>Electronic devices such as mobile phones and personal stereos should not be used during the flight.</i>
in other words, specifically, to be (more) specific, that is to say, I mean	• to clarify the meaning of a sentence	<i>The company is facing financial difficulties; in other words, they cannot pay off their debts.</i>
so, therefore, otherwise, thus, in this case, for this reason, under those circumstances, consequently, as a consequence, as a result	• to express the results or the consequences of a situation	<i>Alex didn't sleep at all last night and consequently he feels very tired today.</i>
but (for), except (for), apart from	• exception	<i>Apart from her mother-in-law, everyone liked Sarah's wedding dress.</i>
beginning: initially, first, first of all, at first, to begin/start with continuing: second, secondly, after this/that, afterwards, then, next concluding: finally, lastly, last but not least, in the end, eventually, to conclude, in conclusion	• to organise the text	<i>First you boil some salted water. Then you add the pasta and cook for ten minutes. Finally you drain the pasta, add some butter and serve immediately with your favourite sauce and grated cheese.</i>
regarding, considering, concerning, with respect/regard to, as for, as to	• for reference	<i>The government must take serious action with regard to the problem of pollution.</i>
to summarise, to sum up, in summary, in short, on the whole, (all) in all, altogether	• to summarise	<i>To summarise, this novel gives us a clear picture of life in the nineteenth century.</i>
in my opinion/view, according to, personally	• to give opinions	<i>According to most art critics, Guernica is a masterpiece of modern art.</i>

Grammar Practice

A Circle the correct answers.

Regardless of / **As for** what you may think and **apart from** / **contrary to** popular belief, pasta is not an Italian invention, **however** / **but** a Chinese one. **To be more specific** / **In addition to this**, legend has it that Marco Polo, the explorer, learnt the recipe for pasta from the Chinese **and** / **or** brought it to Italy. Pasta is the most important food in Italy. **In fact** / **In short**, it is served **as** / **like** a starter to any meal. It is **not only** / **both** popular in Italy **but** / **and** also in other countries, where it is served with different sauces. **Concerning** / **Regarding** the sauces, there are so many that even the most fussy eaters are sure to find something they like.

B Complete the sentences using the appropriate linking word from the box.

otherwise	not only...but also	neither...nor	to conclude	but for	personally
either...or	in comparison to	besides	in this case	however	next

- I agree with you. **Personally**, I believe that anything you learn is useful.
- To conclude** my talk, I'd just like to emphasise how important it is to recycle anything we can.
- I'd like to visit Spain with you, **however** I can't get the time off work.
- You had better pack tonight, **otherwise** you'll have too much to do in the morning.
- And **next** on the show with us tonight, we have Mike Sullivan!
- I would have been in deep trouble **but for** my friend who is a lawyer.
- This house is very small **in comparison to** ours.
- He has many good qualities **besides** being very intelligent.
- Neither** Michael **nor** Samantha are going on the excursion because they want to study for their exam.
- They **not only** made the wedding cake **but also** the appetisers.
- You weren't responsible for the accident. **In this case**, the other person must pay for the damage to your car.
- You can take **either** the blue bag **or** the green one. Not both!

C Choose the correct answers.

_____ (1) historians, people were very superstitious in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. _____ (2), people were terrified of witches, and _____ (3), thought they were _____ (4) the devil. _____ (5), witchcraft was considered to be one of the most serious crimes. _____ (6), anyone even suspected of being a witch was hunted down and _____ (7) put to death by hanging or by being burnt at the stake.

- a. Specifically b. Concerning **c. According to**
- a. As a matter of fact** b. In the same way c. On the other hand
- a. as well as b. too **c. furthermore**
- a. likewise **b. like** c. similarly
- a. Nevertheless **b. Consequently** c. However
- a. Thus** b. Otherwise c. Particularly
- a. secondly **b. afterwards** c. last but not least

_____ (8) these facts, one would think that they had some proof that these women were _____ (9) witches, and _____ (10) they didn't. _____ (11), there wasn't any real way of identifying a witch. _____ (12) they made up ways of identifying them. _____ (13), any natural marks _____ (14) moles or birthmarks, were thought to be "witch" marks. _____ (15), they used another terrible method of testing a "witch". They tied her up and _____ (16) threw her into a river. _____ (17), it was thought that the guilty would float (because people _____ (18) believed that water rejected evil) _____ (19) the innocent would drown. _____ (20) those who floated, they were later killed anyway. It wasn't until the late seventeenth century, as scientific knowledge increased, that belief in witchcraft _____ (21) began to fade, and the "witch laws" were _____ (22) abolished in 1736. _____ (23) the last English execution, that was in Exeter in 1684.

8. a. With regard b. Altogether **c. Considering**
 9. a. to tell you the truth **b. indeed** c. especially
 10. a. however **b. yet** c. but
 11. a. As a result b. Otherwise **c. In fact**
 12. **a. For this reason** b. In this case c. In other words
 13. a. Similarly b. Such as **c. For instance**
 14. **a. such as** b. as for c. but for
 15. **a. What is more** b. In addition to c. On the whole
 16. a. second **b. after that** c. initially
 17. a. Therefore b. In conclusion **c. Strangely enough**
 18. a. both **b. actually** c. besides
 19. **a. and** b. as c. otherwise
 20. a. Besides **b. As for** c. Except
 21. **a. eventually** b. lastly c. then
 22. a. last but not least b. yet **c. finally**
 23. a. To summarise **b. With regard to** c. In the end

D Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. I must admit that I haven't read the report yet.
tell To _____ **tell you the truth** _____, I haven't read the report yet.
2. We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, which is next Thursday.
say We are supposed to meet again in a week's time, _____ **that is to say** _____ next Thursday.
3. You know, she's a good swimmer but she also plays tennis very skillfully.
well You know, _____ **as well as being** _____ a good swimmer, she plays tennis very skillfully.
4. We could visit them or we could call them instead.
either We _____ **could either visit or call** _____ them.
5. You should not only give up smoking but also follow a healthier diet.
addition You should follow a healthier diet _____ **in addition to giving up** _____ smoking.
6. The article was not only interesting but also informative, you know.
both The article _____ **was both interesting and informative** _____, you know.
7. The truth is that he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.
fact As _____ **a matter of fact** _____, he doesn't enjoy travelling very much.
8. I had to repeat the exam because I failed it.
consequence I failed the exam _____ **and as a consequence** _____ I had to repeat it.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

take after: look like sb, resemble

take off: (1) leave the ground (aeroplane) (2) remove (clothes)

take on: accept a job or responsibility

take over: win control or management of sth

take up: begin or become interested in a new hobby or activity

1. The baby takes after his father. He's got the same blue eyes.
2. You shouldn't take on any more responsibilities if you feel you won't be able to handle them.
3. The two brothers took over the company when their father died.
4. The plane had to make an emergency landing only a few minutes after it had taken off.

B Complete using prepositions.



1. She was angry with/at me for forgetting her birthday.
2. He shouted at me for no reason at all.
3. Will you forgive me for being so selfish?
4. You can't always blame everyone else for your mistakes.
5. They accused him of stealing the money from the counter.
6. He was charged with murder and had to appear in court the next day.
7. Kate apologised to us for being late.
8. I disagree with the government's policy concerning traffic regulations.
9. I'm having trouble with my car. Could you help me start it?
10. Three young men have been arrested for breaking into the building.
11. The football team put the blame on the referee for not winning the game.
12. It's no use arguing with them; their decision is final.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

MAKING IT A BETTER PLACE TO LIVE

At times, it seems that people have no sense of responsibility towards their environment. They have the tendency to carelessly drop their rubbish wherever they happen to be, even when there is no shortage of rubbish bins. However, this must change.

Littering doesn't only make a place look ugly, it also puts public health at risk and can endanger wildlife. The authorities need to become more informative about how pollution affects our everyday lives, providing the community with a better education concerning the preservation of the environment.

There is no quick or simple solution. One thing is certain, though. Failure to act now will in the long term mean a great loss. The choice is ours!

RESPONSE
TEND, CARE
SHORT

DANGER, INFORM

EDUCATE

FAIL

LOSE, CHOOSE

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

bite (v):	use your teeth to cut into sth
sip (v):	drink sth slowly by taking a small quantity at a time
chew (v):	break up food in your mouth (using your teeth) in order to swallow it
gulp (v):	eat or drink sth quickly by swallowing large quantities
swallow (v):	cause sth to go from your mouth down into your stomach

food (n):	what people or animals eat
meal (n):	the food you eat for breakfast, lunch or dinner
course (n):	one part of a meal (starter-main course-dessert)
dish (n):	food prepared in a particular style or combination

book (v):	(a hotel room, ticket, lesson, etc.) reserve sth, arrange to have or use it at a particular time
reserve (v):	(a table, ticket, magazine, seat, etc.) arrange for it to be kept especially for you

- Doctors say that we should always chew our food well before swallowing it.
- She gulped down her milk as she was late for school.
- Ouch! I bit my tongue by mistake.
- The little boy swallowed a coin accidentally and was taken to hospital.
- We sat there for over an hour while he just sipped his coffee without saying a word.
- I never have three meals a day; I usually skip lunch.
- The national dish of Greece is moussaka.
- I don't think we should cook any food for the party. We can order pizzas.
- We were offered a three- course dinner.
- Diana booked her flight three weeks beforehand.
- Could I reserve a table for two for Saturday evening, please?

unit | 23 | Participles

Participles as adjectives

Present Participle (-ing)

Present participles as adjectives have an **active** meaning and describe a person, thing or event.

He is a hard-working person.

It was a very boring play.

The film was fascinating.

Past Participle (-ed)

Past participles as adjectives have a **passive** meaning and describe a person's feelings or attitudes.

He looks exhausted.

The audience was utterly bored.

Everyone was fascinated by the film.

Participles replacing clauses

A. The present participle is used:

	Examples
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a clause of time introduced with when, while, as, after, before, etc. for a lengthy action interrupted by a shorter or sudden one. for an action taking place at the same time as another one. for an action taking place immediately before another one. 	<p><i>Walking home, she was attacked by a dog. (As she was walking home, she was attacked by a dog.)</i></p> <p><i>I arrived at the examination centre feeling very nervous. (When I arrived at the examination centre, I was feeling very nervous.)</i></p> <p><i>Opening the door, I found two letters on the floor. (As I opened the door, I found two letters on the floor.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a clause of manner. 	<p><i>Reading books, he managed to improve his vocabulary. (He managed to improve his vocabulary by reading books.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a clause of reason introduced with because, since, as, for. 	<p><i>Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop. (As they didn't want to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a relative clause in the active voice. 	<p><i>The girl talking to Jim is my sister. (The girl who is talking to Jim is my sister.)</i></p>

B. The past participle is used:

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> instead of a subject + verb in the passive voice. 	<p><i>Shocked by the tragedy, they didn't know what to say. (They were shocked by the tragedy and didn't know what to say.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a relative clause in the passive voice. 	<p><i>Clothes made in France and Italy are very elegant. (Clothes which are made in France and Italy are very elegant.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> to replace a conditional sentence containing passive voice. 	<p><i>Stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week. (If it is stored in the fridge, the pudding will keep for up to one week.)</i></p>

C. The perfect participle is used for an action that happened before another one in the past.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Active voice: having + past participle 	<p><i>Having finished cleaning up, she started cooking. (She finished cleaning up and then she started cooking.)</i></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Passive voice: having been + past participle 	<p><i>Having been seriously injured, the driver was rushed to hospital. (The driver had been seriously injured and was rushed to hospital.)</i></p>

note

- Participles are sometimes accompanied by **when, while, before, after, if, though**.

He noticed the scratch while washing his car.

- If a participle is at the beginning of a sentence, its subject is the same as that of the main verb:
Crossing the road, I was nearly knocked down by a car.

But: *Pushing the button, the lift moved up to the third floor.* (This would mean that the lift pushed the button.)

- If the subject of the participle is different from the subject of the verb, it goes at the beginning of the sentence.

Weather permitting, we may drive to the beach.

Grammar Practice

A Complete using adjectives ending in *-ing* or *-ed*.

- We found Egypt fascinating (fascinate).
- Karen was surprised (surprise) by the news.
- He was a loving (love) father to all his children.
- We were amazed (amaze) to see so many birds.
- I am very pleased (please) with my results.
- The most annoying (annoy) thing was the heat.
- The doctor is concerned (concern) about your health.
- Fairy tales are enchanting (enchant). Don't you agree?
- The film was very boring (bore).
- The trip was great but exhausting (exhaust).



B Complete using the present, the past or the perfect participle of the verbs in the brackets.

- Making (make) the salad, I cut my finger.
- Warned/Having been warned (warn) about the bad weather, they cancelled the fishing trip.
- Reading/Having read (read) the book, I wrote down some notes.
- Beaten (beat) well, the mixture will thicken.
- Having polished (polish) his car, he then vacuumed it.
- The man giving (give) the speech is my son.
- Not feeling (not feel) well, the boy left school early.
- Surprised (surprise) by the event, we didn't know what to say.
- Not knowing (not know) where to go, I asked for directions.
- Trapped/Having been trapped (trap) in the car, they waited for help.
- The dry cleaner ruined my coat while cleaning (clean) it.
- The food eaten (eat) by the guests had been prepared by caterers.
- The film, being (be) a great success, will be made into a film.
- Only articles written (write) by students will appear in the school's newspaper.
- Having spent (spend) all my money, I asked my brother to lend me some.

C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Don't forget to turn off the oven before you leave the house.
leaving Don't forget to turn off the oven before leaving the house.
- You know, after painting the flat, it looked new.
been You know, having been painted, the flat looked new.
- The children's performance at the concert was very impressive.
audience The audience was very impressed by the children's performance at the concert.
- Well, we decided to walk to work because the bus drivers were on strike.
being Well, the bus drivers being on strike, we decided to walk to work.
- If you look after it properly, the goldfish will live for at least two years.
looked The goldfish will live for at least two years if looked after properly.

6. Unfortunately, I watched TV the whole afternoon and I didn't manage to finish my homework.
spent Unfortunately, having spent the whole afternoon watching TV, I didn't manage to finish my homework.
7. Anyone who doesn't pass the test must sit it again.
not Anyone not passing the test, must sit it again.
8. I found that working six days a week tired me.
was Working six days a week was tiring for me.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

turn down: (1) reject, refuse to accept sth (2) reduce the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment

turn off: switch off

turn on: switch on

turn out: result in a particular way and have the degree of success indicated

turn over: move sth so that the top part is facing downwards

turn up: (1) arrive unexpectedly (2) increase the amount of sound, heat etc. produced by a piece of equipment

- Don't forget to turn the television off before you go out.
- Guess who turned up at the party!
- The teacher told us to turn over the page and begin the next exercise.
- Thank you for your offer, but I'm afraid I'll have to turn it down.
- It's dark, why haven't you turned on the lights yet?
- If I had known the cake would have turned out like this, I never would have attempted to make it.

B Choose the correct answers.

- I'm experienced _____ computer programming.
 a. in b. at c. about
- There are quite a few people who suffer _____ headaches.
a. with b. from c. by
- I don't think I could cope _____ so much work.
 a. with b. for c. about
- Kim believes that German cars are superior _____ Japanese ones.
 a. to b. from c. than
- How did you succeed _____ finding a job so soon?
a. with b. about c. in
- I have difficulty _____ understanding Geometry.
a. about b. in c. with
- John is clever _____ making up stories.
a. in b. with c. at
- Jane is really good _____ painting.
 a. at b. for c. with
- The president is capable _____ cancelling the meeting.
a. for b. with c. of
- I'm hopeless _____ sports.
a. in b. at c. with

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

WEATHER PERMITTING

The weather is an important topic of conversation for the British, but in 1995 they had more to talk about than usual. In comparison to other years, it was a year with very unusual weather patterns. A rainy spring, the wettest ever recorded, the hottest summer and one of the coldest winters they had ever experienced. In fact, since the beginning of the 1970s, rainfall during storms has increased dramatically all over the world. As a result, complaints about changing weather conditions are common. But why are we having all these changes? Climatologists and scientists, after a lot of investigation, agree that global warming is to blame for this. However, they are not all in agreement as to how this will affect us. Warnings given by some climatologists say that if we don't prepare for droughts and floods, we will face problems like starvation. Others say that winters will be warmer, so the growth of more crops in more places will be possible. In any case, it seems that we should all be prepared to experience changes in the climate and learn to live with them.

CONVERSE

COMPARE

RAIN

BEGIN

COMPLAIN

SCIENCE, INVESTIGATE

WARN

STARVE

GROW

D Complete using the correct form of the words given.

rob (v):	steal money or property from sb
steal (v):	take sth away without permission or intention of giving it back
kidnap (v):	take sb away by force and hold them prisoner in order to demand sth from their family or the government

robber (n):	person who steals from a bank, shop or vehicle using force or threats
thief (n):	person who steals from sb else
burglar (n):	person who enters a building illegally, with the intention of stealing
kidnapper (n):	criminal who kidnaps another person

investigation (n):	the act of finding out the truth about an event
search (n):	attempt to find sb or sth by carefully looking for them
research (n):	the act of studying or examining sth in order to find out facts about it

- Many banks in this area have been robbed.
- The masked men kidnapped the child and asked for one million dollars ransom.
- The store detective saw the girls stealing cosmetics.
- A burglar/thief broke into our house and stole our video and TV set.
- The kidnapper told the police where they were holding the woman.
- The robber/thief pointed his gun at the cashier and demanded all the money.
- The car thief was caught while breaking into a car.
- Research has shown that one in three marriages end in divorce.
- The investigation into the plane crash showed that it had been caused by computer failure.
- The search for the missing children continued throughout the night.

Emphatic/Exclamatory Structures - Inversion

A. Emphatic Structures

Emphatic structures are used to emphasise a part of the sentence.

Statements

- **It is/was + ... + that/who(m)**

Sue gave Peter a watch for his birthday last week. →

- *It was Sue that gave Peter a watch for his birthday last week.*
- *It was a watch that Sue gave Peter for his birthday last week.*
- *It was Peter that Sue gave a watch to for his birthday last week.*
- *It was for his birthday that Sue gave Peter a watch last week.*
- *It was last week that Sue gave Peter a watch for his birthday.*

- **That is/was + question word + subject + verb**

That's why he was so upset.

- **Question word + subject + verb + is/was**

What her secret was is something that we'll never learn.

- **Subject + do/does/did + bare infinitive**, in the Present or Past Simple and Imperative.

She does eat cereal every morning.

They did get a divorce eventually.

Do come with us tonight!

Questions

- **Is/Was it + ... + that/who(m)...?**

Is it your car that is parked outside?

Is it Angela that/who(m) you are going to invite?

- **Question word + ever**, to express anger, admiration, concern, etc.

Whatever happened to them? They're late.

- **Is/Was that + question word + subject + verb...?**

Is that why you don't want to see him again?

- **Question word + is/was it that + subject + verb...?**

Why is it that you are so absent-minded?

B. Exclamatory Structures

Exclamatory structures express surprise, shock, fear, anger, admiration, etc.

Structure	Examples
What + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun	<i>What an interesting story!</i> <i>What beautiful houses! What bad behaviour!</i>
How + adjective/adverb (+ subject + verb)	<i>How beautiful she is! How tactfully they behave!</i>
How + adjective + a/an + noun	<i>How fascinating a story!</i>
How + subject + verb	<i>How she sings!</i>
...such + (a/an) + (adjective) + noun	<i>This is such a big house!</i> <i>I've never heard such nonsense!</i>
...so + adjective + a/an + noun	<i>It was so generous an offer!</i>
...so + adjective/adverb	<i>He is so polite! She speaks so calmly!</i>
negative question	<i>Isn't it funny? Isn't that a pity?</i>
Here/There + verb + noun (inversion)	<i>Here comes the Prince of Wales.</i>
Here/There + pronoun + verb	<i>There he goes!</i>
You + (adjective) + noun	<i>You (cruel) murderer! You lucky man!</i>

C. Inversion

When some words or expressions (usually with a negative or a restrictive meaning) are at the beginning of a sentence, the sentence is formed like a question (the auxiliary is placed before the subject). This is called **inversion** and is used for emphasis.

Words and expressions	Examples
Never (before), Rarely, Seldom, Barely, Scarcely...when, Hardly (ever)...when, No sooner...than	<i>Never in my life had I felt so embarrassed.</i> <i>Rarely does he use his credit card.</i> <i>No sooner had I told him the news than everybody in the village knew it!</i>
Only Not only....but also	<i>Only when you see her will you realise how much she has changed.</i> <i>Only in an emergency should you dial 999.</i> <i>Not only did I lock the door, but I also secured the windows.</i>
Expressions with not : Not (even) once, Not often, Not until, etc.	<i>Not even once did she look in this direction.</i> <i>Not until I saw him in person did I realise how tall he was.</i>
Expressions with no : On no account, Under no circumstances, By no means, At no time, In no way, Nowhere, etc.	<i>In no way is he to blame for what happened.</i> <i>Under no circumstances would he accept my proposal.</i>
Little	<i>Little did he know about the surprise that awaited him.</i>
So + adjective/adverb	<i>So bad was the concert that we left during the intermission.</i>

note

Inversion is also used in the following structures:

- after **so** and **as** to agree with affirmative statements.
Julie speaks French and so do her parents. (=her parents do, too.)
The actors performed brilliantly, as did the dancers.
- after **neither** and **nor** to agree with negative statements.
I don't like baseball. Neither does my brother. (=my brother doesn't either.)
- with **should, were, had** in conditional sentences when **if** is omitted.
Should you meet John, give him my best regards.
Had there been a telephone nearby, I would have called the police.
- in exclamatory sentences beginning with **Here/There** when the subject is a noun (not a pronoun).
*Here comes the bus! **But:** Here it comes!*

| Grammar Practice

A Rewrite the sentences using the appropriate emphatic structure to emphasise the words in bold type.

1. We bought the farm **last year**.

It was last year that we bought the farm.

2. He **works** sixteen hours a day.

He does work sixteen hours a day.

3. Craig broke **the window**.

*It was the window that Craig broke. **or** What Craig broke was the window.*

4. I bought the seat covers **for my new car**.

It is/was for my new car that I bought the seat covers.

5. Is **Tom** going to buy the food?

Is it Tom that/who is going to buy the food?

6. Chris sold his car to **Mary**.

It was Mary that Chris sold his car to.

7. **Who** took my CDs?

Whoever took my CDs? or Who was it that took my CDs?

8. Is that your **briefcase** on the table?

Is it your briefcase that is on the table?

B Complete the sentences using exclamatory structures.

1. They are disciplined dogs.

Aren't they disciplined dogs!

How disciplined dogs they are!/disciplined the dogs are!

What disciplined dogs!

They are such disciplined dogs!

2. It was a pleasant surprise.

How pleasant the surprise was!/pleasant a surprise!

It was such a pleasant surprise!/was so pleasant a surprise!

Wasn't it a pleasant surprise!

What a pleasant surprise it was!

3. You are a rude person.

What a rude person you are!

You are such a rude person!/so rude (a person)!

How rude (a person) you are!

You rude person!

4. This is terrible weather.

The weather is so terrible!

How terrible the weather is!

Isn't this terrible weather!/this weather terrible!

What terrible weather this is!

C Choose the correct answers.

1. "I was having a shower when the water was cut off."

"_____! And I still had shampoo in my hair!"

- a. So was I b. So I was c. Nor was I

2. "Jane can read and write Italian."

"Wendy _____. And she also speaks French."

- a. can too b. can so c. can't either

3. "We didn't watch the match last night."

"We _____."

- a. did too b. didn't either c. so did

4. "We'll be visiting Mexico this Christmas."

"_____ Christine. You could go together."

- a. Neither will b. So does c. So will

5. "I only buy recycled paper."

"_____ Harry."

- a. So does b. Neither does c. So is



C Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- You should never use a lift immediately after an earthquake.
account On no account should you use a lift immediately after an earthquake.
- We had never listened to such an interesting speech.
before Never before had we listened to such an interesting speech.
- They wouldn't reject such an offer.
means By no means would they reject such an offer.
- Julie had just arrived when the lights went out.
sooner No sooner had Julie arrived than the lights went out.
- I never received good marks in Maths at school.
receive Not once did I receive good marks in Maths at school.
- The waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close and I had scarcely started eating.
when Hardly had I started eating when the waitress told me that the restaurant was about to close.
- He can't leave the court until he has testified.
can Not until he has testified can he leave the court.
- You mustn't interrupt me during the meeting.
no Under no circumstances must you interrupt me during the meeting.

Vocabulary Practice

A Complete using the correct form of the phrasal verbs given.

wash up:	wash dishes and other kitchen utensils
watch out:	be careful
wear out:	become thin, weak or unsuitable for further use
to be worn out:	to be tired or bored of sth or sb
work out:	(1) find a solution to a problem (2) take part in physical exercise

- You must always watch out for jellyfish when you swim there.
- Could you explain this exercise to me? I just can't work out the answer.
- Jack, it's your turn to wash up tonight.
- I'm always worn out when I get home from work.
- This is the second pair of shoes you've worn out this month.

B Complete using the prepositional phrases given.

to one's amazement /surprise:	surprised, usually by sth unexpected
under arrest:	held by the police (as a suspect for a crime)
under control:	controlled
under the impression:	believing that this is the case
under pressure:	pressured
without (a) doubt:	definitely true, undoubtedly
without delay:	immediately, as soon as possible
without fail/success:	successfully/ unsuccessfully
without warning:	unexpectedly, without letting sb know in advance

- Without (a) doubt, that's the best film I've ever seen.
- For some reason, Louise was under the impression that we were going to a Chinese restaurant.
- Some friends arrived without warning after midnight.
- To my amazement/ surprise, I passed the test. I thought that I had failed it.
- We participated in the competition, however without any success.
- The firemen quickly got the fire under control.
- Send this package off without delay. It must get there today.
- Jack is always under pressure before he goes on holiday. He wants to get things finished before he leaves.
- The policeman told the thief that he was under arrest.

C Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

AND THEY'RE STILL STANDING...

It is indeed quite an achievement that many ancient buildings are still standing, while a lot of modern buildings collapse with the slightest movement of the earth. This seems unacceptable, considering the advances in technology. As a result, engineers receive a lot of criticism, especially when lives are lost.

One of the reasons why ancient buildings still stand is because they are conservative structures. The pyramids are a good example. Their huge weight is spread over a wide area, so they cannot topple over.

Today, engineers want to create new designs which have never been tested before, so they rely on computers for safety predictions. However, these may be incorrect or misleading and could cause the destruction of the building in the future.

Prevention of disasters is something that engineers should pay more attention to. This is sometimes difficult, as costs must be kept down. Perfection cannot always be achieved, but safety should be their main priority.

ACHIEVE

MOVE

ACCEPT

CRITICISE

WEIGH

CORRECT

DESTROY

PREVENT, ATTEND

PERFECT

D Complete using the words given.

sunrise (n): when the sun first appears in the sky in the morning

sunset (n): when the sun disappears from the sky in the evening

sunshine (n): light and heat coming from the sun

sunlight (n): light coming from the sun during the day

shade (n): area protected from bright sunlight

shadow (n): dark shape on a surface caused by sth standing between the light and the surface

season (n): one of the four main periods - each with typical weather conditions - into which a year is divided

climate (n): general weather conditions that characterise a place

weather (n): conditions of the atmosphere in one area at a particular time

- I enjoy sitting in the sunshine at outdoor cafes in spring.
- I love big windows as they let in a lot of sunlight.
- The length of a shadow depends on the time of day.
- People gather here in the evening to watch the sunset.
- We woke up very early in the morning to watch the sunrise.
- In summer, it's advisable to sit in the shade.
- The climate in Greece is warm and dry.
- The weather forecast for tomorrow is fine and sunny.
- My favourite season is spring when flowers bloom.

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. _____ the room, I noticed it had been renovated.
 a. Entering b. Entered c. Having been entered d. Having entering
2. The weather was warm, _____ he took some jumpers with him as well.
 a. on the other hand b. therefore c. nevertheless d. otherwise
3. _____ buying paint, I bought some paintbrushes.
 a. In addition to b. Furthermore c. As well d. What is more
4. Jack won't come to the meeting and _____.
 a. Betty won't too b. neither will Betty c. nor won't Betty d. Betty won't neither
5. _____ by a snake, I was rushed to hospital.
 a. Bitten b. Having bitten c. Biting d. Been bitten
6. What _____ something nobody knows.
 a. are his plans is b. his plans are is c. are his plans that is d. his plans are it is
7. _____ the facts, she must be guilty.
 a. In conclusion b. Indeed c. Considering d. In my opinion
8. At no time _____ the house.
 a. left they b. did they leave c. they left d. they did leave
9. The house needs painting, _____ the bedrooms.
 a. according to b. with regard c. in particular d. in conclusion
10. "I don't like football".
 "_____".
 a. Neither my sister does b. Neither does my sister c. My sister doesn't neither d. Nor doesn't my sister
11. Cars _____ in Japan are very reliable.
 a. having manufactured b. have been manufactured c. manufacturing d. manufactured
12. It is the most _____ film I've ever watched.
 a. bored b. bore c. boring d. boredom
13. Not only _____ the report, but I also e-mailed it.
 a. didn't I type b. I did type c. did I typed d. did I type
14. I don't want to go; _____, I'm not coming with you.
 a. in other words b. in the other words c. last but not least d. strangely enough
15. No sooner had the guests left _____ she started tidying up.
 a. when b. than c. before d. while

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- Chris, you're interested in psychology, aren't you?
find Chris, you find psychology interesting, don't you?
- In fact, both Mark and Lucy were against the idea.
nor In fact, neither Mark nor Lucy liked the idea.
- It was such a cold night last night!
so It was so cold (a night) last night!
- Did Kevin give you those flowers?
gave Was it Kevin who/that gave you those flowers?
- Mary, who didn't want to be late, left the house an hour earlier.
wanting Mary, not wanting to be late, left the house an hour earlier.
- She had just left when her mother called.
sooner No sooner had she left than her mother called.
- Actually, I drank some coffee last night and I couldn't go to sleep until three in the morning.
drunk Actually, having drunk some coffee last night, I couldn't go to sleep until three in the morning.
- Both Angela and Brian like spaghetti, as far as I know.
so Angela likes spaghetti and so does Brian, as far as I know.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- You must be crazy. You can't turn _____ an offer like that.
 a. down b. back c. out d. over
- Could you help me with my Maths? I'm having a lot of difficulty _____ solving these problems.
a. at b. in c. for d. on
- What do you mean you've _____ out your shoes? You only bought them last month.
a. wiped b. watched c. worked d. worn
- The new manager is taking _____ next month.
a. up b. over c. on d. off
- He attempted to _____ the painting from the gallery but he was caught.
a. rob b. steal c. thief d. kidnap
- The _____ took the child and called his parents to demand a ransom.
 a. kidnapper b. robber c. thief d. burglar
- I gave the dog the bits of _____ that were left over.
a. dish b. course c. food d. meal
- Recent _____ has shown that margarine is healthier than butter.
a. investigation b. research c. discover d. search
- When I have a sore throat, I find it hard to _____.
a. chew b. swallow c. sip d. gulp
- I like sitting on the beach watching the _____ in the evenings.
a. sunshine b. sunrise c. sunlight d. sunset
- My favourite _____ is summer because I love the sea and sun.
a. climate b. place c. season d. weather

Final FCE Test

PART 1

For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer A, B, C or D best fits each gap. Mark your answers on the separate answer sheet.

SUMMER HOLIDAYS DON'T MEAN RELAXATION

Holidays, holidays, holidays! That's all you hear before summer begins. Everyone is busy planning and booking ahead. Many (1) _____ to their break for months and are in a (2) _____ of excitement for weeks before they leave. People have their cars serviced and go shopping to buy (3) _____ clothes.

I suppose it's logical, I (4) _____ after a whole year of work, people want to relax and (5) _____ themselves of some stress. However, I have my (6) _____ about summer holidays. It's the time when people vacate the city and go to summer resorts (7) _____ find that everyone else has done the same thing. Places are very crowded. You go to restaurants where you have to (8) _____ to be served, the room you had booked is next to a nightclub and (9) _____ is expensive.

(10) _____ you finally get back, you feel so tired that you need another holiday to get (11) _____ the one you just had. I sometimes wonder if going on holiday is worth all that preparation and (12) _____.

ANSWER SHEET

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|----|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 | A look forward | B expect | C anticipate | D wait | 1 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 2 | A situation | B circumstance | C state | D position | 2 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 3 | A correct | B relevant | C right | D appropriate | 3 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D |
| 4 | A say | B mean | C express | D remark | 4 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 5 | A relieve | B take off | C remove | D shake off | 5 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 6 | A uncertainties | B hesitations | C dilemmas | D doubts | 6 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D |
| 7 | A only to | B such as | C so that | D even though | 7 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 8 | A insist on | B call for | C demand | D command | 8 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 9 | A whole | B everything | C entire | D total | 9 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 10 | A Until | B While | C As | D When | 10 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> D |
| 11 | A over | B by | C off | D out of | 11 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |
| 12 | A annoyance | B problem | C inconvenience | D disturbance | 12 | <input type="checkbox"/> A | <input type="checkbox"/> B | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> C | <input type="checkbox"/> D |

PART 2

For questions 13-24, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

THE LIFE CYCLE OF THE EMPEROR PENGUIN

The Emperor Penguin is the largest penguin, standing over one metre tall. Its life cycle is something extraordinary and rather different (13) _____ that of other animals.

The Antarctic summer (Dec-Feb) is the time when the Emperor Penguins have a "holiday" and they feed in the sea. During the month of March, they set off for their long journey south to the place where they breed and lay their eggs. As the long, dark winter arrives, each female lays one egg directly on the ice. The male immediately lifts the egg off the ice onto his feet. He (14) _____ pushes it under his stomach for warmth.

The female has completed her task and can now return to the sea to feed, leaving the male with the egg. For over two months, (15) _____ the males huddle together (16) _____ keep warm. (17) _____ other animal except for the penguin can survive in temperatures of -70°C .

The chick will hatch during July. That's (18) _____ the female returns bringing food for her chick. By that time the male penguin will have lost about half his body weight, because he won't have eaten (19) _____ for five months. As (20) _____ as the female returns, the male leaves in search of food.

For the next six months, both parents take turns looking (21) _____ the chick. (22) _____ the beginning of the following summer, the (23) _____ family goes to the sea. The adults can at last have a two-month break before (24) _____ cycle begins again.

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT
WRITE HERE

13	to/from	13 <input type="text"/>
14	then	14 <input type="text"/>
15	all	15 <input type="text"/>
16	to	16 <input type="text"/>
17	No	17 <input type="text"/>
18	when	18 <input type="text"/>
19	anything	19 <input type="text"/>
20	soon	20 <input type="text"/>
21	after	21 <input type="text"/>
22	At	22 <input type="text"/>
23	whole	23 <input type="text"/>
24	another/a/the	24 <input type="text"/>

PART 3

For questions 25-34, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

MAGAZINES

Magazines are big business. A large (25) _____ of the population buy them (26) _____. In fact, some people even get their magazines brought to their home by a (27) _____ service. For others, magazines are an (28) _____ and they even collect them.

But magazines are not to my (29) _____. They have ads promising a (30) _____ appearance with the use of certain products. They also print (31) _____ and unreliable information. Apart from that, they fill their pages with photos of (32) _____ clothes. What a waste of money! I admit that I'll (33) _____ buy one when going on a trip, but short novels or comics are always (34) _____, as far as I'm concerned.

MAJOR
REGULAR
DELIVER
OBSESS
LIKE
DESIRE
ACCURATE
FASHION
OCCASION
PREFER

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT
WRITE HERE

25	majority	25 □ □
26	regularly	26 □ □
27	delivery	27 □ □
28	obsession	28 □ □
29	liking	29 □ □
30	desirable	30 □ □
31	inaccurate	31 □ □
32	fashionable	32 □ □
33	occasionally	33 □ □
34	preferable	34 □ □

PART 4

For questions 35-42, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Write the missing words in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

35. "Did you go to the swimming pool yesterday?"

Macey asked me.

whether

Macey asked _____ to the swimming pool the previous day.

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT
WRITE HERE

35	me whether I had gone	35	0	1	2
----	------------------------------	----	---	---	---

36. He didn't say anything although he was dissatisfied with the service at the hotel.

spite

He didn't say anything _____ with the service at the hotel.

36	in spite of being dissatisfied/ his dissatisfaction	36	0	1	2
----	--	----	---	---	---

37. I can't stand people interrupting me when I'm studying.

rather

I'd _____ me when I'm studying.

37	rather people didn't interrupt	37	0	1	2
----	---------------------------------------	----	---	---	---

38. We must return the books to the library by Wednesday.

taken

The books _____ to the library by Wednesday.

38	must be taken (back)	38	0	1	2
----	-----------------------------	----	---	---	---

39. The house will need painting before we move in.

have

We'll need _____ before we move in.

39	to have the house painted	39	0	1	2
----	----------------------------------	----	---	---	---

40. Mike, I'd like to know the name of the hotel you stayed at.

which

Mike, _____ at?

40	which hotel did you stay	40	0	1	2
----	---------------------------------	----	---	---	---

41. Look, if she goes to the shopping centre by bus, she'll be there in ten minutes.

take

Look, _____ ten minutes to go to the shopping centre by bus.

41	it will take her	41	0	1	2
----	-------------------------	----	---	---	---

42. They didn't let us feed the animals at the zoo.

allowed

We _____ the animals at the zoo.

42	weren't allowed to feed	42	0	1	2
----	--------------------------------	----	---	---	---

Final ECCE Test

Grammar

- All applications for the job must _____ in by Friday.
a. send
b. have sent
 c. be sent
d. have been sent
- Amy finally got _____ her money problems.
a. out of
b. around
 c. over
d. away
- The woman _____ daughter was kidnapped lives next to me.
a. who
b. who's
c. whom
 d. whose
- "Are you still going to the party on Friday?"
"Yes, _____ something else comes up."
 a. unless
b. in case
c. as long as
d. supposing
- He is really interested _____ studying art.
a. of
b. for
c. about
 d. in
- Martha, I never knew you were _____ cook!
a. a such good
 b. such a good
c. so good
d. a so good
- Do you mind walking me _____ my car?
 a. to
b. in
c. at
d. until
- Mom, it's time you _____ that I'm not a little girl anymore.
a. be realizing
b. are realizing
 c. realized
d. will realize
- "I'd really like to travel to Africa one day."
"You _____ that for years. Why don't you just do it?"
a. are saying
b. were saying
c. say
 d. have been saying
- She wondered why _____.
a. was I crying
b. I am crying
 c. I was crying
d. am I crying
- How long _____ French?
a. are you learning
 b. have you been learning
c. do you learn
d. have you learned
- "Is this restaurant always so busy?"
"No. Rarely _____ so busy."
a. this place being
 b. is this place
c. this place is
d. does this place
- Mike, it's March 1st —the rent is _____ today.
a. due until
b. due for
c. due to
 d. due
- The new cinema is _____ Northern Ave.
a. at
 b. on
c. under
d. of

15. My parents are quite strict—they never let me _____ out late.
 a. stay
 b. to stay
 c. staying
 d. having stayed
16. “Where’s Grandma?”
 “She’s in the garden _____ the plants.”
 a. watering
 b. to watering
 c. to water
 d. for watering
17. John and Amy have a beautiful _____ daughter.
 a. two-years-old
 b. two-year-olds
 c. two-year-old
 d. two-years-olds
18. The hotel is _____ close by, but quite cheap, too.
 a. in addition
 b. as well as
 c. not only
 d. also
19. I don’t think there’s _____ point in apologizing now.
 a. little
 b. such
 c. very
 d. any
20. Even though they live nearby, I _____ visit them.
 a. not ever
 b. hardly ever
 c. hardly never
 d. had never
21. It was _____ book that I couldn’t put it down.
 a. such interesting
 b. so interesting
 c. such an interesting
 d. so interesting a
22. I’m really tired _____ you talking down to me.
 a. of
 b. in
 c. at
 d. for
23. “Did you paint the house by yourself?”
 “No, I _____ professionally.”
 a. have done it
 b. had done it
 c. had it done
 d. got done
24. _____ can use the pool. You don’t have to be a member.
 a. Anyone
 b. Every
 c. Someone
 d. Each one
25. _____ who told me about the party on Saturday.
 a. Alice
 b. Alice was
 c. She was Alice
 d. It was Alice
26. Anne, I wish you _____ drive like a crazy person!
 a. couldn’t
 b. wouldn’t
 c. could
 d. mustn’t
27. Robert _____ be in his room. He left an hour ago.
 a. mustn’t
 b. can’t
 c. shouldn’t
 d. might not
28. I don’t really know _____ that machine.
 a. to operate
 b. operating
 c. how is operating
 d. how to operate
29. _____ you follow the directions, you won’t have any problem.
 a. As soon as
 b. As much as
 c. As long as
 d. As though

30. _____ not an easy language to learn.
a. The Japanese
b. The Japanese is
c. Japanese are
 d. Japanese is
31. Why don't you pay attention! You _____ things up!
a. constantly messed
 b. are constantly messing
c. have constantly messed
d. constantly messing
32. Maria decided to have her hair _____ blond.
a. dye
 b. dyed
c. dying
d. to dye
33. Hurry up! The plane _____ in one hour!
 a. leaves
b. had left
c. would have left
d. has left
34. Let's go to the movies tonight, _____?
a. aren't we
b. don't we
c. won't we
 d. shall we
35. Twenty minutes of exercise a day _____ stay in shape.
 a. is all you need to
b. that is need for
c. which is in need of
d. of which is needed to

Vocabulary

36. My mother always seems _____ about my health.
 a. concerned
b. contained
c. involved
d. caring
37. This knife is too _____ for me to cut my steak.
a. broad
b. sharp
c. round
 d. blunt
38. _____ exams is always very stressful for me.
a. Giving
 b. Taking
c. Making
d. Setting
39. It's a police officer's job to _____ the law.
a. ban
 b. enforce
c. keep
d. obey
40. It's not in my best _____ to listen to everything he says.
a. advice
b. plan
 c. interest
d. wish
41. He took a _____ breath before he dove into the water.
a. wide
b. strong
c. large
 d. deep
42. The spaghetti you made looks _____ delicious!
a. fully
b. nicely
 c. absolutely
d. interestingly
43. He was disqualified and unable to _____ in the race.
a. oppose
b. complete
 c. compete
d. enter

44. Josh can't _____ be serious about moving to Africa.
a. definitely
b. fairly
c. simply
 d. possibly
45. There were several kidnapping _____ reported in the neighborhood.
a. events
 b. incidents
c. tragedies
d. news
46. I need you to _____ some cheese for the macaroni, please.
a. chop
 b. grate
c. boil
d. peel
47. Can you please keep an _____ on my son for a second?
 a. eye
b. arm
c. alarm
d. ear
48. An aspirin will definitely help _____ your headache.
a. fight
b. relax
 c. relieve
d. recover
49. I'm starting to feel like my boyfriend is taking me for _____.
 a. granted
b. sure
c. certain
d. definite
50. Alice _____ to have met Johnny Depp in person.
a. regards
 b. claims
c. says
d. considers
51. She _____ that I go with her to the movies.
a. assisted
b. persisted
 c. insisted
d. resisted
52. I wasn't able to _____ that lecture on Sunday.
a. enroll
 b. attend
c. advise
d. accept
53. The crime _____ has risen drastically over the past few years.
a. scene
 b. rate
c. measure
d. percent
54. I knew my sister was in big _____ from the way my mom looked at her.
a. problem
b. difficulty
 c. trouble
d. shock
55. Can you please give me a(n) _____ with my shopping bags?
a. lift
b. ride
 c. hand
d. arm
56. I can't _____ what it must be like to be so poor.
 a. imagine
b. expect
c. remember
d. think
57. Many different kinds of food sold today have _____ flavouring added to them.
a. fake
b. wrong
 c. artificial
d. false

58. Anne _____ James a happy birthday at his party.
a. told
 b. wished
c. offered
d. wanted
59. The teacher told the students to _____ their hands before speaking.
a. stretch
b. apply
 c. raise
d. give
60. He had changed so much, I _____ recognized him.
a. never
 b. barely
c. obviously
d. virtually
61. I'm not really that _____ with the new software program.
a. aware
 b. familiar
c. capable
d. able
62. I'm afraid the concert will be _____ until further notice.
 a. postponed
b. cancelled
c. held
d. given
63. This room is so _____! Can we open a window?
a. dirty
b. chilly
 c. stuffy
d. misty
64. In an effort to _____ the ice, she tried telling a joke.
a. crack
 b. break
c. melt
d. crush
65. His table _____ are horrible! He eats like a pig!
a. behaviours
b. moods
 c. manners
d. actions
66. The reporter told the celebrity that the interview was off the _____.
a. plan
b. file
 c. record
d. agenda
67. Her glasses broke when she _____ them on the floor.
 a. dropped
b. spilled
c. collapsed
d. removed
68. I asked my father if he could give me a _____ to the train station.
a. drive
b. travel
c. pick
 d. lift
69. She gave a _____ excuse for being late to work.
a. risky
b. invalid
c. useless
 d. lousy
70. Who's in _____ of this project?
a. responsibility
 b. charge
c. head
d. direction

Dictionary

A

abbreviation (n): a shortened word or phrase
abnormal (adj): not normal
abolish (v): formally put an end to sth
absent-minded (adj): forgetful, not paying proper attention to sth
accommodation (n): buildings or rooms where people stay
accompany (v): go somewhere with sb
accomplish (v): succeed in doing sth
accordingly (adv): in agreement with sth, therefore
accounts (n): detailed records of all the money received or spent
accountant (n): sb whose job is to keep financial records
accumulate (v): gather together in an increasing quantity, collect
accurate (adj): precise, correct to a very detailed level
accustomed to sth (adj): used to sth
ache (n): physical pain or discomfort caused by injury or illness
achieve (v): succeed in doing sth
acknowledge (v): accept or admit that sth exists or is true
acquire (v): get, gain possession of sth
actually (adv): in fact
adaptable (adj): adjustable, changeable
additive (n): a substance added to food for colouring, flavouring or to make it last longer
adequate (adj): enough, sufficient
admiration (n): feeling of liking and respect for sb or sth
adopt (v): start having a new attitude or plan
ads (n): advertisements
advance (n): progress, development
advisable (adj): sensible, correct
affect (v): influence, cause sb or sth to change in some way
affection (n): liking or being fond of someone
allergic reaction (n): becoming ill or getting a rash when you eat, smell or touch sth
alternative (adj): other
alternative (n): possibility of choice between two things
amateur (n): sb who does sth as a hobby, not as a job
amazement (n): surprise, astonishment
ambition (n): wanting very much to do or achieve sth
amusement (n): sth you find pleasant or funny (game, pastime etc.)
animal rights (n): the belief that animals should not be exploited or abused by humans
animation (n): films in which drawings

or puppets appear to move
anniversary (n): the date on which sth special happened in some previous year
annual (adj): once a year
anthem (n): a formal song or religious hymn written for a special occasion
anticipate (v): await sth, be prepared for sth to happen
apparently (adv): clearly, obviously
appetiser (n): food served at the beginning of a meal, starter
appetite (n): desire to eat
applaud (v): clap your hands to show approval
approach (v): (1) get closer to sb/sth (2) deal with a task or problem
approval (n): approving of sth, believing that it is acceptable
approve (v): like, admire sb or sth
approximately (adv): almost, nearly, roughly
arch (n): a curved line
arrangement (n): plan, preparation for sth
arrow (n): a long thin weapon which is sharp and pointed at the end
artistic (adj): good at drawing, painting etc.
ash (n): what is left after sth has burnt
ashtray (n): a small dish for cigarette ashes
assure (v): make sb certain that sth will happen
astonish (v): surprise very much
attack (v): try to hurt or damage sb or sth using violence
attempt (v): try, make an effort to do sth
attendance (n): being present or regularly going to a place
attitude (n): point of view, approach, opinion, behaviour
audience (n): group of people watching or listening to a play, concert, film, etc.
autobiography (n): an account of your life, which you write yourself
available (adj): that can be found, obtained or used
await (v): wait for sth, expect sth
award (n): a prize
aware (adj): knowing sth

B

balanced (adj): having all its different parts in correct proportions
ban (v): state officially that sth must not be done, shown or used
barely (adv): hardly, only just, scarcely
barn (n): a building on a farm where crops or animal food are kept
basement (n): a floor of a building built below ground level
bazaar (n): sale organised to raise

money for charity
beforehand (adj): in advance, earlier than sth else
bin (n): a container for putting rubbish in
binding (n): anything that wraps around sth
birthmark (n): a mark on your body that you have since you were born
bit (n): small piece
blame (v): believe that sb or sth is responsible for sth bad
bleach (n): a chemical used for whitening clothes and killing germs
bleed (v): lose blood as a result of injury or illness
blood pressure (n): the force at which blood flows around your body
bloom (v): when the flower bud opens
board (n): a group of people managing a company or organisation
bolt (n): flash of lightning seen as a white line in the sky
bound (adj): tied up securely
bravery (n): brave behaviour, being brave
break out (phr v): begin suddenly (war, fire, etc.)
breakthrough (n): significant development or progress
breath (n): the air you take into and let out of your lungs when you breathe
breathalyser (n): a bag or electronic device used by the police to test whether a driver has drunk too much alcohol
breed (v): when animals reproduce
bright (adj): strong and noticeable, not dark
brilliant (adj): very smart, intelligent
broadcast (v): transmit on radio or television
broccoli (n): a type of vegetable, green in colour
bump into (phr v): meet or come across by chance
burden (n): causing you a lot of difficulty or worry
by means of (pp): by way of
by nature (pp): having a characteristic or quality as part of your character

C

calcium (n): a white mineral found in bones and teeth
calmly (adv): quietly, peacefully
campaign (n): planned set of activities carried out in order to achieve an aim
cancel (v): prevent sth arranged from happening
candidate (n): a person considered for a position or taking an examination
capsule (n): a small container with a drug or other substance inside it, used

for medical or scientific purposes

cardboard (n): thick, stiff paper used for making boxes

chick (n): a baby bird

conventional (adj): ordinary, normal

cardigan (n): a woollen jumper which is open in the front and can be fastened with buttons

carving (n): an object which has been cut out of wood, stone, etc.

cauliflower (n): a type of vegetable, white in colour

ceremony (n): a formal event, usually religious

chain (n): rings (usually of metal) linked together in a line

chairman (n): a person in charge of a committee or organisation

challenge (v): invite sb to fight or compete with you in some way

challenging (adj): requiring great effort and determination

chapel (n): a small church

charge (v): ask sb to pay money for sth that they have bought or for a service

charity (n): an organisation which raises money to help people

charm (n): sth believed to have magic powers

chase (v): to run after sb in order to catch them

cheer up (phr v): become more cheerful

chickenpox (n): a disease that gives you high temperature and red itchy spots

chop (n): a slice of lamb or pork, usually including a rib

circumstance (n): situation, condition

city-state (n): ancient state consisting of a city and smaller towns dependent on it

claim (v): say that sth is true

clarify (v): make sth easier to understand

clink (v): make a light sharp ringing sound

closet (n): wardrobe

coach (n): trainer

collapse (v): fall down suddenly

colloquial (adj): informal speech

combination (n): a mixture of things or qualities

combine (v): join together, blend, mix

comforting (adj): making you feel less worried or unhappy

command (n): order

comment (v): express your opinion about sth or give an explanation for it

commentary (n): a description of an event broadcast on radio or television while the event is taking place

commercial (adj): related to buying or selling goods

committee (n): a group of people who meet to make decisions for the organisation they represent

community (n): all the people living in an area

compete (v): take part in a game, contest

or fight

complete (adj): containing all the parts sth should contain

complexion (n): the colour and general condition of a person's skin

complicated (adj): not simple

compulsive (adj): obsessive, not able to stop doing sth wrong or harmful

concentrate (v): focus your attention on sth, consider sth closely

concern (n): worrying about a situation
conclude (v): end sth, draw a conclusion about it

conference (n): a meeting at which formal discussions take place

confide (v): trust sb and tell them your secrets

confirmation (n): proof, knowing that sth is definite

conflict (n): serious disagreement or argument about sth important

conformist (adj): behaving or thinking like everybody else

confront (v): deal with sth, face

conscious (adj): awake, alert, aware of sth

consciousness (n): being awake or alert

conservative (adj): not willing to accept change

constantly (adv): always, continually

construction (n): building of houses, factories, roads etc.

consult (v): ask for specialised advice

consume (v): eat, drink or use up sth

consumer (n): a person who buys things or uses services

contact (v): get in touch with sb

container (n): anything that can be used for putting things into it (e.g. a box)

content (adj): fairly happy or satisfied

content(s) (n): anything that is inside of sth else

contract (n): legal agreement, usually involving money

contrast (n): clear difference between two or more things

contribution (n): a sum of money you give in order to help pay for sth

convenient (adj): easy, useful for a particular purpose

converse (v): talk to someone

convince (v): persuade, make sb believe sth

co-ordination (n): organising the activities of groups so that they work together efficiently

corporation (n): large business or company

cosmetics (n): substances (e.g. lipstick, powder) which people use on their face or body in order to look more attractive

cottage (n): a house in the country

create (v): invent, design or make sth new

credit card (n): a card which allows you to buy goods on credit

crisps (n): baked slices of potato sold in

packets

criterion (n): a standard by which sth can be judged

criticise (v): express disapproval of sth or say what is wrong with it

crooked (adj): bent, twisted

crops (n): plants (e.g. wheat, potatoes) grown in large quantities

crowning (n): placing a crown on one's head

cube (n): an object with six square surfaces which are all the same size

culture (n): civilisation, customs, life-style

custard tart: a sweet dessert

D

dare (v): have enough courage to do sth

dart (n): a small narrow object with a sharp point which can be thrown or shot

deal with (phr. v): solve a problem or make a decision about a situation

deceive (v): make sb believe sth that is not true in order to gain sth yourself

declare (v): (1) state officially (2) say what goods you have bought from abroad in order to pay the right tax

deduction (n): drawing a conclusion about sth

defeat (v): beat your opponent in a battle, game or contest

deficiency (n): lack, shortage, not having enough of sth

dehydrated (adj): when the body doesn't have enough water

delivery (n): carrying sth to a destination

demolish (v): destroy a building completely

demonstration (n): a march or gathering in which people take part in order to show their opposition to or support for sth

deodoriser (n): sth that can hide or remove unpleasant smells

depend on (v): rely on

deprive (v): prevent sb from having or enjoying sth

depth (n): how deep sth is (downwards, backwards, or inwards)

desperate (adj): being in such a bad situation that you would try anything to change it

detached house (n): not joined to any other house

determination (n): not willing to change your mind about sth you have decided to do

devastated (adj): shocked and very upset by sth

device (n): a piece of machinery or a special tool used for a particular purpose

diabetic (n): a person who suffers from diabetes (having too much sugar in their blood)

dialect (n): a form of a language spoken in a particular area

dictate (v): say or read sth aloud, so that

others can write it down

digest (v): when the body processes the food we eat

digital (adj): systems recording or transmitting information in the form of thousands of very small signals

dim (adj): not bright, not easy to see

dim (v): make or become less bright

direct (v): control the production of a film

dirt (n): dust, mud or stain on sth

disapprove of sth (v): not like, not agree with or approve of sth

disaster (n): a terrible accident or misfortune

discipline (n): obeying laws or rules, working in a controlled way

disconnected (adj): not connected or joined, cut off

discovery (n): learning sth that was not known before

disheartening (adj): disappointing

dissatisfaction (n): not being satisfied or pleased with sth

distant (adj): far away in space or time

distract (v): draw sb's attention away from sth

distress (n): a state of extreme suffering or pain

distribute (v): hand out or deliver things to a number of people

divorce (n): a formal ending of a marriage by law

downwards (adv): towards the ground or a lower level

drain (v): remove any liquid from food, especially after it has been cooked

drawback (n): disadvantage

drought (n): long period of time during which no rain falls

drown (v): die in water due to lack of oxygen

E

earplugs (n): small pieces of soft material which are put into your ear to protect you from noise or water

earthquake (n): shaking of the ground, usually causing destruction

eating grounds (n): fields where animals can feed

eccentric (adj): sb whose habits or opinions are different from those of most people

economise (v): save up

effective (adj): working well and producing the desired results

effort (n): trying hard to do sth

election (n): voting in order to choose a person or group of people for an official position

elegant (adj): stylish in appearance and graceful in movement

eliminate (v): remove sth completely, get rid of

emblem (n): a design that has been chosen as a symbol of a country or

organisation

embroider (v): sew a decorative design on a piece of cloth

emergency (n): an unexpected difficult or dangerous situation demanding immediate action

emotion (n): a person's feelings

emperor (n): a man who rules an empire

enable (v): make it possible for sb to do sth

enchanting (adj): causing feelings of delight or pleasure

encounter (v): come across, meet, experience

engaged (telephone line) (adj): busy, so that you cannot speak to the person you are trying to call

engagement (n): an arrangement that sb has made to do sth

enthruse (v): make sb feel excited or enthusiastic

entire (adj): whole, complete

equip (v): give sb or sth the tools or the skill they need for a particular purpose

erode (v): crack and break, becoming gradually destroyed

escapologist (n): sb who entertains audiences by escaping from difficult situations

essay (n): composition

establish (v): set up sth

evacuate (v): move people out of a place when in danger

eventually (adv): finally, in the end, after all

evidence (n): proof, anything that causes you to believe that sth is true

excessive (adj): more than necessary

execution (v): killing sb as a punishment for a serious crime

exhausted (v): tired either physically or mentally

expedition (n): an organised journey made for a specific purpose (e.g. exploration)

extinction (n): the death of all the remaining living members of a species

extinguish (v): put out a fire

extraordinary (adj): special, unusual

extreme (adj): great, maximum, very intense

eye shadow (n): make-up for the eyes

eyelash (n): hair growing on the upper and lower eyelids

eyesight (n): the ability to see

eyewitness (n): sb who was present at an event and can describe what happened

F

fabric (n): cloth, material

fade (v): gradually become unnoticed or unimportant

failure (n): (1) lack of success in sth (2) when sth goes wrong or stops working

fairness (n): being reasonable, right and just

familiarise (v): learn about sth and start

to understand it

fancy (v): want to have or to do sth

fascinated (adj): charmed, finding sth very interesting and attractive

feature-length film (n): a full-length film about a fictional situation

feeder (n): a container filled with food for birds or animals

fellow (n): colleague, person with whom you have sth in common

fence (n): a wooden or metal barrier between two places

filthy (adj): very dirty

financial (adj): related to or involving money

fire escape (n): emergency exit from a building

fireproof (adj): sth that won't catch fire

firewood (n): wood cut into pieces so that it can be burned on a fire

firmly (adv): strongly

first-aid kit (n): a box containing anything that can be used in medical emergencies

fit (v): install

fix (v): repair, mend

flavour (n): the taste of a food or drink

flee (v): escape, run away from sb or sth

flight attendant (n): member of the crew of an aeroplane, whose job is to look after the passengers

float (v): lie above or just below the surface of a liquid

flood (n): an overflow of water, usually due to heavy rains

floorboards (n): pieces of timber used to cover floors

floss (n): soft, very thin pieces of thread used for cleaning between the teeth

fluent (adj): speaking a language easily and correctly

flute (n): a musical instrument

footstep (n): the sound of sb walking each time their foot touches the ground

foreman (n): an experienced person who supervises other workers

fortunate (adj): lucky

fortune (n): luck, what will happen to you in the future

foundation (n): an organisation set up for a particular purpose

founder (n): the person who started an institution or organisation

frame (n): a structure that gives shape and support to sth

frustrate (v): upset, make sb angry

full-length (adj): having the complete length

function (v): work, operate

fund (n): amount of money collected or saved for a particular purpose

furthermore (adv): moreover, additionally

fussy (adj): very concerned with unimportant details

G

garbage (n): rubbish, especially waste from a kitchen
garlic (n): small round white bulb of a plant like an onion, with a very strong taste and smell
gather (v): come together in a group
generate (v): cause sth to begin and develop
genuine (adj): original, authentic, real
global (adj): sth that happens in all parts of the world
glove (n): piece of clothing which covers your hands and wrists
go off (phr v): (1) make a sudden loud noise (2) become stale, sour or rotten (food, drink, etc.)
gold-tipped (adj): the pointed end of sth which is covered in gold
goose (n): a large bird like a duck
gossip (n): informal conversation, often about other people's private affairs
goulash (n): a traditional Hungarian dish
gradual (adj): occurring in small stages over a long period of time
graduate (n): sb who has been awarded a degree at university or college
grotesque (adj): unnatural, unpleasant or out of proportion
guarantee (v): make certain sth will happen
guidance (n): help and advice, especially sb older or more experienced than you
guilty (adj): unhappy because you have done or think you have done sth wrong or bad
gums (n): firm pink flesh inside the mouth, out of which the teeth grow

H

habitual (adj): sth done usually or often, typical, characteristic
handicapped (adj): having a physical or mental disability
handlebar (n): upper front part of a bicycle for holding and steering
hang around (phr v): spend time somewhere or with sb
harbour (n): area of the sea at the coast, partly enclosed by land or strong walls and safe for boats
harm (v): cause physical injury to sb, usually on purpose
harmless (adj): not dangerous, safe
haste (v): act quickly
hatch (v): when an animal comes out of its egg by breaking the shell
heater (n): a device used to keep sb or an area warm
herb (n): a plant whose leaves are used in cooking to add flavour
herd (n): a group of animals of one kind that live together
hesitate (v): pause slightly while doing or saying sth because you are uncertain or worried about it
hibernate (v): spend the winter in a state

of deep sleep

hideout (n): a place where sb hides from the police or the authorities
high-pitched (adj): a high tone of voice
hospitality (n): friendly welcoming behaviour towards guests or strangers
huddle (v): a number of animals or people sitting or lying close to each other
hurricane (n): an extremely violent wind or storm
hyperactive (adj): very active, overactive

I

ideal (adj): perfect
identify (v): recognise, distinguish
ignore (v): pay no attention to sb or sth
illegally (adv): against the law
illiterate (n): sb who can't read or write
impatient (adj): not patient
imply (v): indicate or say sth indirectly, hint at sth
impolite (adj): not polite
import (v): buy products or raw materials from another country for use in your own country
impose (v): use your authority to force people to accept sth
impression (n): what you think of sb or sth
impressive (adj): exciting, amazing
improbable (adj): unlikely to be true or to happen
in accordance (pp): according to
in progress (pp): still going on
incident (n): an event, occurrence, sth that happens
include (v): make sb or sth a part of a larger whole
inconsiderate (adj): not caring how your words or actions will affect other people, thoughtless
inconvenient (adj): causing problems or difficulties
increase (v): become greater in the number, level or amount
indeed (adv): in fact
indicate (v): point out, show, suggest, imply
indigestion (n): when the stomach cannot process the food easily
independence (n): when a country has its own government and is not ruled by another country
individual (adj): relating to one particular person, rather than to a large group
industrial (adj): related to or used in industry (factories)
inherit (v): receive money or property from sb who has died
initially (adv): at the beginning
insect repellent (n): a product that can be sprayed in the air or on the body to keep insects away
insistence (n): strong wish to do sth and refusing to give in

install (v): fit a piece of equipment somewhere so that it is ready to be used
instructor (n): sb who teaches a skill such as driving or skiing
instrument (n): a tool or device used for doing a particular task
insufficient (adj): not enough
insurance company (n): a company into which people pay money so that if anything happens to them, the company pays them out
insure (v): pay money to an insurance company
intelligence (n): the ability to understand, think and learn quickly
intend (v): decide or plan to do sth
intermission (n): short interval between two parts of film, play, concert, etc.
interrupt (v): stop an activity for a period of time
intruder (n): sb who goes into a place where they are not supposed to be
involve (v): contain, include
irrational (adj): not logical
irresponsible (adj): not responsible, careless
irritation (n): a feeling of annoyance, especially for sth that you cannot easily stop or control
isolate (v): separate from other people physically or socially
issue (n): topic, theme

J

judge (v): form an opinion about sb or sth, evaluate, assess
jumper (n): a pullover, usually a woollen sweater
junction (n): where roads or railway lines meet and cross
justice (n): fairness in the way people are treated

K

kennel (n): a small wooden house for a dog to live in
kid yourself (v): believe sth that is not true
knit (v): make sth from wool by using two knitting needles or machine
knot (n): tying a string or rope upon itself

L

laboratory (n): a place where scientific research is carried out
launch (v): start a campaign, etc.
law (n): system of rules developed by a society or government in order to deal with crime, business agreements or social relationships
layer (n): a flat strip of a material
lead (n): a soft, grey metal (used in pencils)
leak (n): a hole through which liquid or gas can pass
leakage (n): when liquid or gas escapes

from a pipe or container due to a hole or other fault

lean (v): bend your body in a particular direction

lecture (n): a talk given in order to teach people about a particular subject

legible (adj): clear and easy to read

lightning (n): a bright flash of light in the sky during a thunderstorm

limit (v): restrict

liquid (n): a substance that flows (not solid or gas)

literate (adj): able to read and write

litter (v): throw rubbish on the ground

loathing (n): great dislike and disgust

locate (v): find out where sb or sth is

loop (n): curved or circular shape

louse (n): small insect living on the bodies of people or animals and bites to feed off their blood

loyal (adj): faithful

lunar (adj): related to the moon

lungs (n): two organs inside our chest used for breathing

M

magistrate (n): an official acting as a judge in law courts which deal with minor crimes or disputes

mainly (adv): primarily, mostly

maintain (v): keep at the same rate or level

malaria (n): a serious disease carried by mosquitoes

malnourished (adj): not fed properly

mammal (n): species whose females give birth to babies, not eggs

mango (n): a tropical fruit

manufacturer (n): a person or organisation which produces goods in large quantities

manipulate (v): skilfully persuade people to do what you want

manlike (n): having characteristics similar to human

manoeuvre (n): movement from one position to another

margarine (n): a yellow spread used instead of oil or butter

master (n): sb with authority over a servant or slave

masterpiece (n): an extremely good work of art

measles (n): infectious illness that causes high temperature and red spots

measure (n): action carried out by the authorities in order to achieve a particular result

measurement (n): the process of measuring an amount or size

medical (adj): related to medicine

medication (n): pharmaceutical products used to treat an illness or disease

meditation (n): remaining silent and calm, thinking about sth carefully and deeply for a long time

medium (adj): average, midway between

extremes

military service (n): service in a country's armed forces

mineral (n): a substance naturally formed in rocks and in the earth, and also found in small quantities in food and drink

minimise (v): reduce sth to the lowest possible level or prevent it from increasing beyond that level

misfortune (n): sth unpleasant or unlucky

mislead (v): give sb a wrong idea about sth

mist (n): thin fog

mole (n): dark spot on the skin

moral (adj): behaving in a way that you think is right, proper or acceptable

mould (v): form into sth

mountaineering (n): climbing the steep sides of a mountain

mud (n): a sticky mixture of soil and water

mugging (n): attacking sb in order to steal their money

N

narrative (n): a story or account of a series of events

nation (n): the people of a country

neat (adj): organised, clean, tidy

neglect (v): fail to look after sth properly

networks (n): companies that broadcast radio or television programmes

nickname (n): an informal name

nomadic (adj): travelling from place to place rather than living somewhere permanently

nonsense (n): anything silly or that does not make sense

noodle (n): ribbon-like strip of pasta

noticeable (adj): obvious

nuclear testing (n): the testing of nuclear power

nuclear weapon (n): weapon that uses nuclear energy

nutrition (n): taking food into the body and absorbing the substances that are necessary for staying healthy

O

observe (v): keep an eye on sth, watch it carefully

obvious (adj): easy to see or understand

occasion (n): the time when sth happens, instance of sth happening

occupy (v): have, hold or use sth

occur (v): happen, take place

omit (v): leave out

on a daily basis (pp): done every day

on the edge of your seat : very interested or excited, waiting to see what will happen

onwards (adv): moving forward, continuing

operate (v): work, use

operation (n): surgery

opportunity (n): a situation in which it is possible to do sth, chance

opposing (adj): not the same, completely different

optional (adj): sth you can choose whether you will do it or not, not compulsory

ordinary (adj): normal, not special or unusual

origin (n): the beginning of sth

outcome (v): the result of an action or situation

outer space (n): the area outside the earth's atmosphere where other planets are

overalls (n): piece of clothing covering the whole body

overcome (v): deal with a problem or a feeling successfully, control it

overestimate (v): estimate sth too highly

overnight (adv): immediately, suddenly

overseas (adv): abroad, to or from another country

overtime (n): time you spend doing your job in addition to your normal working hours

overweight (adj): weighing more than is considered healthy

ownership (n): owning sth

ozone layer (n): part of the earth's atmosphere that protects us from harmful radiation

P

paintbrush (n): a brush used for painting

parade (n): a procession of people or vehicles moving through a public place in order to celebrate an important day or event

parsley (n): a small plant with curly leaves used for flavouring or decorating food

passer-by (n): a person walking past sb or sth

patient (n): sb receiving medical treatment from a doctor or hospital

pattern (n): repeated or regular way in which sth happens or is done

peak (n): the highest level of sth

peel (v): remove the skin of a fruit or a vegetable

perception (n): understanding things through the senses

perform (v): carry out an action, especially a complicated task

permit (v): allow sb to do sth or sth to happen

persistence (n): continuing to do sth despite the difficulties

persuasive (adj): capable of making sb believe or do sth

pessimist (n): sb who thinks bad things are going to happen

pick up (phr v): collect

picturesque (adj): attractive, interesting and unspoiled place

pierce (v): make holes through sth
pillow (n): a rectangular cushion for resting your head when you sleep
pine (n): a type of wood, light in colour
pipeline (n): a large pipe used for carrying oil or gas over a long distance, often underground
pitch (v): put up a tent
pity (n): feeling very sorry for sb
plaque (n): sth that forms on the surface of the teeth and causes gum disease
plaster (n): material that is put on broken legs or arms in order to allow the broken bone to mend
pluck (v): pull the strings of a musical instrument with your fingers
polar (adj): related to the earth's poles
policy (n): a set of ideas or plans used as a basis for decisions in politics, economics or business
polish (v): make sth shine
possess (v): have or own sth
possession (n): anything that you own, that belongs to you
post (v): mail
postpone (v): delay, put off
pouch (n): a pocket of skin on an animal's stomach in which its baby grows (e.g. a kangaroo)
practice (n): (1) the work a professional does (2) anything done regularly
precaution (n): action taken to avoid a dangerous or undesirable event
precede (v): be in front of sb or sth
precisely (adv): exactly
predict (v): say that sth will happen in the future
preheat (v): heat up in advance (e.g. an oven)
pretend (v): act in a way that could make people believe that sth is true although it isn't
pride (n): feeling of satisfaction because you have done sth good or well
priority (n): the most important thing that must be done or dealt with
private (adj): for one person or small group, not for the general public
process (n): a way of doing sth
prohibit (v): forbid or make sth illegal, ban
promote (v): give sb a more important job in the organisation they work for
promotion (n): when you are given more important things to do in your job and earn more money
proper (adj): appropriate, correct, suitable
properly (adv): correctly, satisfactorily, appropriately
property (n): (1) anything that belongs to sb (2) a building and the land belonging to it
protest (n)/(v): say or show publicly that you object to sth
publicity sheet (n): a sheet of paper advertising certain products

publish (v): print numerous copies of a book or magazine

Q

qualifications (n): the qualities and skills necessary for doing a task
quantity (n): an amount of sth
quarrel (n): a disagreement, argument
queue (n): a line of people, cars, etc. waiting for sth
quit (v): stop doing sth, give up

R

race (n): a group of people of common ancestry
rainfall (n): the amount of rain that falls during a particular period
raise (n): an increase in sb's wages or salary
raise (v): (1) bring up a child (2) collect (money, etc.)
ransom (n): money demanded by a kidnapper in order to set free a person they have kidnapped
rate (n): the degree or extent to which sth happens
reasonable (adj): quite good, fair, sensible
recognise (v): know who a person is or what sth looks like
recommend (v): advise, suggest sth as the best choice
reconnect (v): connect again
reconsider (v): think about sth again and see if it needs changing
recover (v): regain health after being ill
rectangular (adj): a shape with two pairs of equal, parallel sides
referee (n): an official who controls a sports match
refreshment stand (n): a small shop or stall with an open front selling soft drinks
refuel (v): to fill the petrol tank with more fuel
refugee (n): sb who has been forced to leave their country due to a war or because of their political or religious beliefs
regardless of (adj): not affected or influenced by sth, not taking sth into consideration
regards (n): greetings, friendly feelings towards someone
region (n): large area of land
regret (v): feel sad or disappointed because of sth that happened
regulation (n): rule controlling people's behaviour or the way sth is done
reject (v): (1) not accept sth (2) not agree with sb
release (v): make sth available for sale or public showing
reliable (adj): sb or sth that can be trusted to work well or behave in a desirable way
relief (n): feeling glad because sth

unpleasant has not happened or is no longer happening
relieve (v): make sth less unpleasant, cause sth unpleasant to disappear
rely on (v): depend on sb or sth
remain (v): stay in a particular place or condition
remove (v): take sth away from where it is
renovate (v): restore a building to good condition
replace (v): take the place of sth
represent (v): act on behalf of sb or sth
representative (n): sb who acts on behalf of another person or a group of people
require (v): need, demand
resent (v): feel bitter and angry about sb or sth
reserved (adj): not expressing your feelings
resign (v): formally announce that you are leaving a job or position
resort (n): a place where many people go for holidays
response (n): reply, reaction, answer
responsibility (n): duties that you have because of your job or position
restless (adj): impatient, finding it difficult to keep still
restore (v): return sth to its original condition
restrict (v): prevent sb from acting freely
restriction (n): sth that limits what you can do
restrictive (adj): preventing you from doing sth
reverse (adj): the opposite to sth
review (n): report or talk expressing your opinion on sth
revival (n): becoming active or popular again
revolution (n): an attempt by a group of people to change the political system of their country by force
revolve (v): move in a circle around a central point or line
robe (n): a loose piece of clothing which covers all your body and goes down to your toes
roll (v): move along a surface turning over many times
roller-coaster (n): a small railway that goes up and down steep slopes and people ride for pleasure and excitement
roots (n): sb's background, the place or culture that sb or their family comes from
rough (adj): violent, harsh
route (n): the way from one place to another
row (n): a line of people or things
rubber (n): strong waterproof elastic substance
ruin (v): damage, spoil, harm
runner-up (n): sb who has finished in second place of a race or competition

rush (v): go somewhere quickly
ruthless (adj): cruel, willing to do anything that is necessary to achieve sth

S

sacred (adj): holy, believed to have a special connection with God
safeguard (v): protect sb or sth from being harmed, lost or badly treated
sale (n): the quantity of products sold
salmon (n): a soft fish with pink flesh found in the Pacific and Atlantic oceans
sample (n): a small quantity of a product showing you what it is like
scales (n): machine or device used for weighing people or things
scarcely (adv): barely, only just, rarely
schedule (v): arrange sth to happen at a particular time
science-fiction (n): fiction about events taking place in the future or in another part of the universe
scratch (v): mark or cut the surface of sth with a rough or sharp instrument
screen (n): a flat surface on which pictures or words are shown
seabed (n): the ground at the bottom of the sea
seat belt (n): a strap that you fasten across your body while sitting in a car or plane for safety
seek (v): try to find
seldom (adv): rarely
select (v): choose
self-confidence (n): being confident and sure of yourself
selfish (adj): caring only about yourself, not about other people
send off (phr v): send sth by post
sense (v): become aware of sth
sequence (n): a series of things or events occurring one after another in a particular order
session (n): a period during which sth takes place (eg. an official meeting or other activity)
shallow (adj): not deep
shape (n): figure or outline of sth
sheet (n): a rectangular piece of paper
shelter (n): small building or covered place which will protect people from bad weather or bomb attacks
shepherd (n): sb who looks after sheep
shoelace (n): a string that ties up a shoe
shore (n): the land along the edge of a river, sea or lake
Siamese twins (n): twin babies born joined together at some point of their body
sickening (adj): making you feel sick
side effects (n): the harmful effects of a drug or medicine
sigh (v): let out a deep breath, expressing disappointment or tiredness
sightsee (v): visit places that are of interest to tourists

significance (n): importance
significant (adj): very important
signify (v): mean, represent sth
site (n): place
sketching (n): quick drawing without much detail
skilful, skillful (adj): doing sth very well
skill (n): knowledge and capability enabling you to do sth well
skull and crossbones (n): a picture of a human skull over a pair of crossed bones, used to indicate death or danger
sky-diving (n): jumping out of an aeroplane and falling through the air using a parachute
slant (v): lean to the left or to the right
sleeves (n): parts of clothing covering your arms
sliding door (n): a type of door which opens and closes by sliding left or right
slight (adj): being very small in degree or quantity
slippery (adj): sth difficult to walk on because it is wet, smooth or greasy
slot (n): a narrow opening in a machine or container in which coins can be inserted
(at a) snail's pace (pp): very slowly
social worker (n): sb whose job is to give help and advice to people who have serious problems
solid (adj): very hard or firm
sore (adj): causing you pain and discomfort
source (n): the place where sth begins
spacious (adj): large in size, with lots of room
spectacular (adj): impressive, breathtaking, fantastic
speech (n): a formal talk which sb gives to an audience
spice (n): powder or seeds from particular plants, which are put in food to give it flavour
spicy (adj): food strongly flavoured with spices
spike (n): a long piece of metal with a sharp point
spiritual (adj): related to people's deepest thoughts and beliefs
split up (phr v): separate
spread (v): affect a large area or many people
spy (n): sb who obtains secret information about another country or organisation
squeeze (v): get the juice out of a fruit or vegetable by pressing it
stable (n): a building on a farm where animals are kept
stage (n): a step of development
stain (n): a mark which is difficult or impossible to remove by washing
staircase (n): a set of stairs inside a building
stake (n): pointed wooden post

standard (n): sth used in order to judge the quality of sth else
starch (n): a carbohydrate found in bread, pasta, potatoes, etc.
stare (v): look at sb or sth for a long time, often rudely or impolitely
startle (v): surprise and frighten slightly
starve (v): suffer greatly from lack of food
state (v): say or write sth in a formal or definite way
status (n): social or professional position
steam (n): hot mist that forms when water boils
steel (n): a very strong metal made from iron
sting (v): when an insect or a plant pricks you and causes you a sharp pain
stock (n): a supply of sth
store (v): keep things somewhere in order to use them when they are needed
storm (n): a lot of rain and high winds
strain (n): intense physical or mental effort
strategy (n): a general plan in order to achieve sth
street directory (n): a book containing maps of the streets of a city
strengthen (v): make sth stronger
strict (adj): severe, sth that must be obeyed
structure (n): the way sth is built or made
stuck (adj): unable to move although you want to get away from a place or situation
substantially (adv): significantly, greatly
substitute (v): take the place of sth else
subway (n): underground railway
suitable (adj): right or appropriate for a job or position
suntan lotion: a cream you put on your skin when sunbathing
superficial (adj): related to the surface or the most obvious features of sth
superior (adj): much better than sb or sth else
supernatural (adj): beyond what is considered normal or natural
superstition (n): believing in magic or things that are not real or possible
supplement (n): a pill containing nutritious elements, taken in order to improve your health or diet
supplies (n): food and equipment necessary for sth
surface (n): the flat top part of sth
surrender (v): not resist or give up the effort to win
surround (v): be all around sth
survey (n): trying to find out information about a group of people by asking a series of questions
survivor (n): sb who continues to live after a disaster, accident or illness

sweat (n): liquid which comes through the skin when you are hot, ill or afraid

T

tactfully (adv): taking care not to say or do sth that would hurt other people's feelings

tactic (n): a method used in order to achieve sth

take turns (v): when two people do sth one after the other

talkative (adj): talking a lot

tap (n): a device that controls the flow of a liquid coming from a pipe

t-bar (n): the top of the letter T

tear (v): rip or cut sth

telephone directory (n): a book listing people's names, addresses and phone numbers in alphabetical order

terrify (v): scare, frighten

testify (v): give a statement about sth in court

thicken (v): become more solid

threaten (v): say that you will do sth to sb in order to make them do sth you want

thrill (n): great excitement, pleasure or fear

throughout (prep): from the beginning till the end

thunder (n): a loud noise from the sky coming after a flash of lightning

to a certain extent: up to a certain point

tolerate (v): put up with sth, accept it although you don't like it

tool (n): a useful instrument or piece of equipment

topple over (phr v): fall over, collapse

totally (adv): completely

track (n): the rails along which a train travels

train (v): learn different skills in order to do sth

transfer (v): cause sb/sth to move to a different place

transport (n): means of travelling

trapped (adj): unable to escape or move

trigger off (phr v): cause sth to happen

trillion (n): a number with twelve zeros

troublesome (adj): causing trouble

trustworthy (adj): very reliable and responsible

tube (n): a long hollow object like a pipe

tulip (n): a kind of bell-shaped flower

tuna (n): large fish living in warm seas and caught for food

twist (v): injure your ankle or wrist by turning it too sharply

tyre (n): a thick piece of rubber fitted onto the wheels of vehicles

U

unattended (adj): unwatched, left alone, abandoned

unaware (adj): having no knowledge of sth

unbearably (adv): in a very unpleasant,

painful or upsetting way

unbelievable (adj): very good, impressive, extreme, sth that you cannot believe

uncertainty (n): doubt, not being sure about what to do

unconscious (adj): having lost consciousness, unaware of what is going on

underqualified (adj): not qualified enough

underwater link (n): connection between two places beneath the water

unexpected (adj): sth surprising because you don't expect it to happen

universe (n): all the stars and planets

unleaded fuel (n): petrol containing less lead in order to protect the environment

unlikely (adj): not very probable to happen

unrestrained (adj): out of control

unsteady (adj): not steady, shaky

up to date (i): the newest thing of its kind, valid

upward (adj): moving towards a higher point or level

urge (v): try hard to persuade someone to do sth

utensil (n): anything used to cook with

utterly (adv): completely, absolutely

V

vacation (n): holiday

vaccinate (v): give sb an injection in order to prevent them from falling ill

vaccine (n): an injection that prevents people from getting a disease

vacuum (v): clean sth with a vacuum cleaner

value (n): how important or useful sth is

values (n): moral principles and beliefs, ethics

variety (n): different types of sth

vehicle (n): a car, bus, train etc.

vet (n): a doctor for animals

via (adv): going through a place

victim (n): sb who has been hurt or killed

victorious (adj): having won a war, struggle or competition

violent (adj): using physical force or weapons with the intention to do harm

virus (n): a kind of germ that can cause diseases

voluntary (adj): sth done or performed willingly

W

wage (n): payment in return for work or services

warehouse (n): a large building where goods are stored

warning (n): anything informing people of a possible danger, problem or sth unpleasant

warrior (n): a fighter or soldier

(especially in past times)

wax (v): polish a surface by spreading a thin layer of wax on it

weapon (n): a gun, knife or other object used for killing or hurting people or animals

well-behaved (adj): with good manners

wet (v): get water or some other liquid over sth

whatsoever (adv): at all

wheat (n): cereal crop grown for food

whereabouts (n): the location of sth

white lie (n): minor or unimportant lie

willing (adj): wanting, not mind doing sth

willingness (n): desire, strong wish to do sth

wipe (v): clean up with a cloth

wise (adj): clever, sensible, reasonable

witchcraft (n): use of magic powers, especially evil ones

withdraw (v): remove, take sth away

witness (v): see sth happen

woodshed (n): small building where firewood or garden tools are stored

worldwide (adv): all over the world

worthwhile (adj): worth the time, money or effort spent on it, enjoyable, useful

Y

yeast (n): a substance which makes bread rise

Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions

A

account for
accuse of
agree on sth
(dis)agree with sb
aim at
apologise to sb for sth
apply to sb for sth
(dis)approve of
argue with sb about sth
arrest sb for sth
arrive in/at
ask for
assure (sb) of

absent from
accustomed to
addicted to
afraid of
allergic to
amazed at/by
angry at what sb does
angry with sb about sth
annoyed with sb about sth
anxious about
ashamed of
attached to
(un)aware of

(dis)advantage of
advice on
(in) answer to
attack on

B

beg for
begin with
believe in
belong to
benefit from
beware of
blame sb for sth
boast about/of

bad at
bored by/with
bound with
brilliant at
bust with

(put the) blame on sb

C

care about/for
change into
collide with
come from
comment on
compare with/to
complain to sb about/of
concentrate on

congratulate sb on sth
connect to/with
consist of
contrast with
cope with
crash into
criticise sb for

(in)capable of
careful of
careless about
certain about/of
charged with/for
clever at
close to sb/sth
combined with
conscious of
content with
covered in/with
crazy about
crowded with
cruel to
curious about

(take) care of
cheque for
comparison between
confidence in sb
connection between
contact between
cruelty to/towards
cure for

D

date back to
deal with
decide on
dedicate to
demand from
depart from
depend on
describe sb/sth to sb
die in (an accident)
die of/from
differ from
dismiss from
distinguish between
divide between/among
divide into
do sth about
dream about/of

delighted with
dependent on
different from/of
disappointed in/by/about/with
discouraged from
disgusted by/at
disqualified from
dressed in

delay in

demand for
departure from
description of
difference between/of
difficulty in/with
discussion about/on
distance of
doubt about

E

enter into
escape from
excuse sb for sth
experiment on/with

eager for
efficient at
engaged to sb/in sth
equal to
excellent at
excited about
experienced in

(put) effort into sth
engagement to sb
example of
exception to
excuse for
expert at/in/on

F

fail in an attempt
fail to do sth
fight with
fill sth with sth else
finish with
forget about
forgive for

faithful to
familiar to sb
familiar with
famous for
fed up with
fond of
frightened of
full of
furious with sb about/at sth

failure in/to

G

glance at

good at
grateful to sb for sth
guilty of

generosity to/towards

H

happen to

hear about/from/of
hope to do sth/for

handy for
happy with/about
harmful to
hopeless at

(no) hope of

I
include in
inform of
insist on
invest in
involve in

identical to
ill with
impressed by/with
independent of
inferior to
informed about
interested in

idea of
impression on sb
information about
(have no) intention of
invitation to

J
join in
joke about

jealous of

K
knock at/on
know of/about

keen on
keen to do sth

knowledge of

L
laugh at
leave for
lend to
lie to/about
listen to
live on
look for

locked in

lack of

M
mention to
mistake sb for
mix with

married to
mean to

marriage to

N
nervous about

need for

O
object to

obliged to sb for sth

objection to
opinion of/on
opposite of/to

P
pay for
praise sb for sth
prefer to
prepare for
prevent from
protect against/from
provide sb with
punish for
put oneself through

patient with
pleasant to
pleased with
polite to
popular with
proud of
puzzled by/at

pity for
preference for

Q
quarrel with sb about sth

qualified for

quarrel about

R
react to
receive from
recover from
refer to
regard as
relieve oneself of
rely on
remind sb of/about sth
replace sth with sth else
result from/in

related to
responsible for

reaction to
reason for
(have a good/bad) relationship with
reply to
reputation for/of

responsibility for
(make) room for

S
save sb from
search for
separate from
shout at
smile at/to
spend money/time on/in
stare at
succeed in
suffer from
suspect sb of
sympathise with

safe from
same as
(dis)satisfied with/by
scared of
sensitive to
serious about
shocked by/at
short of
shy of
similar to
skillful/skilled at
(feel/be) sorry about/for
superior to
surprised by/at
suspicious of
sympathetic to/towards

smell of
solution to

T
thank for
think of/about
throw at/to
translate from/into

terrified of
thankful for
tired of
talent for sth

(have/be in) trouble with

U
upset about/by

(make) use of

W
warn sb about/of/against
waste time/money on
worry about
write to sb

worried about

Prepositional Phrases

Ahead

ahead of one's time
ahead of schedule

At

at the age of
at the airport
at the beginning (of)
at the bottom of
at breakfast/lunch/dinner
at the bus stop
at the corner
at dawn
at one's desk
at the door
at the end (of)
at first

at first sight
at a glance
at hand
at a high speed
at a hotel
at...km per hour
at last
at least
at a loss
at the match
at midnight
at the moment
at most
at night
at noon
at once
at peace/war

at present
at random
at any rate
at the same time
at the station
at the time
at times
at the top of
at university
at the weekend
at 23 Oxford St.

Before

before long

By

by accident
by air/rail/road/sea
by appointment
by birth
by bus/car/plane etc.

by chance
by cheque
by day/night
by far
by force
by hand
by heart
by land
by luck

by means of
by mistake
by now
by oneself
by phone/post/air mail
by one's side
by the time
by the way

For

for ages
for certain
for a change
for ever
for fear (of)
for fun
for good
(take sth) for granted
for hire/sale

for instance
for the rest of
for one's sake
for the time being
for a while

From

from experience
from memory
from now on
from time to time

In

in addition (to)
in advance
in agreement (with)
in answer to
in bed
in the beginning
in brief
in case of
in cash
in charge of
in colour
in common
in comparison with

in conclusion
in good/bad condition/shape
in control of
in the country
in danger
in debt
in demand
in detail
in difficulty
in the direction of
in doubt
in the end
in fact
in fashion

in favour of
in future
in general
in hand
in good/bad health
in hospital
in a hotel
in a hurry
in ink/pencil/pen
in love (with)
in luxury
in the meantime
in the middle of
in the mirror

in a moment
 in the mood
 in the morning
 in need of
 in the north/south
 in one's opinion
 in order/a mess
 in order to
 in pain
 in pairs
 in particular
 in the past
 in person
 in pieces
 in place of
 in politics
 in practice/theory
 in prison
 in private/public
 in progress

in a queue
 in reality
 in return
 in the right/wrong
 in safety
 in seconds
 in secret
 in the shade/sun
 in short
 in a show
 in sight (of)
 in a state of
 in the station
 in the streets
 in the suburbs
 in good/bad taste
 in tears
 in a bad temper
 in time (for)
 in no time

in one's free time
 in touch (with)
 in town
 in turn
 in uniform
 in use
 in vain
 in a loud/low voice
 in a way
 in the way
 in a word
 in other words
 in writing

Into

into pieces

Off

off the air
 off duty
 off the record
 off school/work

On

on aafternoon/evening
 on the air
 on arrival
 on behalf of
 on one's birthday
 on business
 on the contrary
 on the corner
 on a... day
 on one's death
 on a diet
 on duty
 on earth
 on an excursion/a journey/a tour/a trip etc.
 on an expedition

on fire
 on the... floor (of)
 on foot
 on the one/other hand
 on holiday
 on an island
 on one's knees
 on the left/right
 on one's mind
 on New Year's Day
 on the news
 on the outskirts
 on one's own
 on page...
 on the pavement
 on the phone
 on purpose
 on the radio/television
 on sale
 on second thought(s)
 on this / the street (s)
 on strike
 on time

on top of
 on tour
 on the way
 on the whole

Out of

out of breath
 out of control
 out of danger
 out of date
 out of doors
 out of fashion
 out of hand
 out of luck
 out of order
 out of place
 out of the question
 out of reach
 out of season
 out of sight
 out of stock
 out of use
 out of work

To

to one's amazement/surprise

to this day

Under

under age
 under arrest

under control
 under discussion
 under the impression

under pressure
 under strain

With

with regard to
 with a view to

Without

without delay
 without (a) doubt

without fail/success
 without warning

Derivatives

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
ability, inability, disability	enable, disable	able, unable, disabled
acceptance, acceptability	accept	(un)acceptable>-ly
accident		accidental>-ly
achievement	achieve	achievable
action, activity, activation, actor, actress, acting	act, activate	active, activated
addition, additive	add	additional>-ly
admiration, admirer	admire	admirable>-ly, admiring>-ly
admission, admittance	admit	admissible
(dis)advantage		(dis)advantageous
adventure, adventurer		adventurous>-ly
advertisement, advertiser, advert, advertising	advertise	advertised
advice, adviser, advisability	advise	advisable, advisory
agreement	agree	agreeable>-ly, agreed
alarm	alarm	alarmed, alarming>-ly
amazement	amaze	amazed, amazing>-ly
ambition		ambitious>-ly
anxiety		anxious>-ly
appearance	appear	apparent>-ly
applicant, application, applicator, appliance	apply	applicable, applied
argument	argue	arguable>-ly, argumentative
arrival	arrive	
astonishment	astonish	astonished, astonishing>-ly
attendance, attendant, attention	attend	(in)attentive>-ly
attraction, attractiveness	attract	attractive>-ly, attracted
automation		automatic>-ally
beginner, beginning	begin	beginning
behaviour	behave	behavioural
belief, believer	believe	(un)believable>-ly
bore, boredom	bore	bored, boring
breath, breathing, breather	breathe	(un)breathable, breathless, breathy, breathtaking
care, carelessness	care	caring, careful>-ly, careless>-ly
centre	centre, centralise	central>-ly
cheer, cheerfulness	cheer	cheering, cheerful>-ly, cheerless>-ly, cheery
choice	choose	choos(e)y
combination	combine	combined
comfort, comforter	comfort	(un)comfortable>-ly, comfortless, comforting
comparison, comparability	compare	comparative>-ly, comparable>-ly
competition	compete	competitive
complaint	complain	
conclusion	conclude	conclusive>-ly, concluding
confidence	confide	confident>-ly, confidential>-ly
connection	connect	connecting, connected
consideration	consider	considerable>-ly, (in)considerate>-ly, considered
conversation	converse	conversational, converse>-ly
correction, (in)correctness	correct	(in)correct>-ly, corrective>-ly
courage, encouragement, discouragement	encourage, discourage	courageous>-ly, encouraging>-ly, encouraged, discouraging>-ly, discouraged
creation, creature, creator, creativity	create	creative>-ly
crime, criminal, criminality		criminal>-ly
critic, criticism	criticise	critical, criticising
crowd	crowd	crowded
curiosity		curious>-ly
danger	endanger	dangerous>-ly, endangered
dark, darkness	darken	dark>-ly, darkened
day, daylight		daily
death	die	dead, deadly, deathly
decision, (in)decisiveness	decide	decided>-ly, (in)decisive>-ly
dependant, (in)dependence, dependency	depend	dependent>-ly, independent>-ly
description	describe	descriptive>-ly
destroyer, destruction	destroy	destructive>-ly
development, developer	develop	developing, developed

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
difference	differ	different>-ly
difficulty		difficult
disappointment	disappoint	disappointed, disappointing>-ly
discover, discovery	discover	discoverable
discussion	discuss	
economics, economist, economy	economise	economic, economical>-ly
education, educator	educate	educated, educational>-ly
employer, employee, (un)employment	employ	(un)unemployed, employable
end, ending	end	endless>-ly
energy	energise	energetic>-ally
enjoyment	enjoy	enjoyable>-ly
enthusiasm, enthusiast	enthuse	enthusiastic>-ally
equipment	equip	equipped
excitement	excite	exciting>-ly, excited>-ly, excitable
existence	exist	existent, non-existent, existing
expectation, expectancy	expect	(un)expected>-ly, expectant>-ly
experience, inexperience	experience	experienced, inexperienced, experiential
explanation	explain	explanatory
fail, failure	fail	failed, failing
fashion	fashion	fashionable>-ly
favour	favour	favourable>-ly, favourite
five		five, fifth
fool, foolishness	fool	fool, foolish>-ly
fortune, misfortune		fortunate>-ly, unfortunate>-ly
freedom	free	free>-ly
freezer, freezing	freeze	frozen, freezing
(in)frequency	frequent	frequent>-ly
friend, friendlessness, friendliness, friendship	befriend	friendly, friendless
growth	grow	grown
harm	harm	harmful>-ly, harmless>-ly
health		healthy>-ly
height	heighten	high>-ly
help, helper, helpfulness, helping, helplessness	help	helpful>-ly, helpless>-ly
humour, humorist		humorous>-ly, humourless
hunger	hunger	hungry>-ly
idea, idealisation, idealism, idealistic	idealise	ideal>-ly, idealistic>-ally
illness		ill
image, imagination	imagine	imaginary, imaginable, imaginative>-ly
importance		immediate>-ly
impression	impress	important>-ly
improvement	improve	impressive>-ly
information, informer	inform	improved
injury	injure	informative>-ly
inspection, inspector	inspect	injured
insurance, insurer	insure	insured
intention, intent	intend	intentional>-ly, intent>-ly, intended
invention, inventor	invent	inventive
investigation, investigator	investigate	investigative, investigatory
jealousy		jealous>-ly
laugh, laughing, laughter	laugh	laughing>-ly, laughable>-ly
length	lengthen	long, lengthy
life, living, liveliness	live	live, lifeless, living, lively, alive
logic		logical>-ly
loser, loss	lose	losing, lost
luck		lucky>-ly
marriage	marry	married
medication, medicine		medical>-ly, medicated
misery		miserable>-ly
motion, mover, move, movement	move	moving, movable, motionless
motor, motoring, motorist	motorise	motorised
murder, murderer, murderess	murder	murderous>-ly
nature	naturalise	natural>-ly
nerve, nervousness	nerve	nervous>-ly, nerveless, nervy
noise		noisy>-ly, noiseless>-ly
norm, normalisation, normality	normalise	(ab)normal>-ly
operation, operator	operate	operational, operative
(dis)order	order	(dis)ordered, (dis)orderly
origin, originality	originate	original>-ly

NOUN	VERB	ADJECTIVE/ADVERB
owner, ownership	own	own
pain	pain	painful>-ly, painless>-ly, pained
(im)patience		(im)patient>-ly
peace, peacefulness		peaceful>-ly
(im)perfection, perfectionism, perfectionist	perfect	perfect>-ly, perfectible
performer, performance	perform	
person, personality, personnel	personalise	personal>-ly
photograph, photo, photographer, photography	photograph	photographic>-ally
pleasure	please	pleased, pleasing>-ly, (un)pleasant>-ly
poison, poisoning, poisoner	poison	poisonous, poisoned
popularity, population	populate	populated
possession, possessor	possess	possessed, possessive
(im)possibility		(im)possible>-ly
practicality, practice, practitioner	practise	practical>-ly, practicable
prediction, (un)predictability	predict	predictive, (un)predictable>-ly
press, pressure	press, pressure	pressed, pressing
prevention	prevent	preventable, preventive>-ly
profession, professional, professionalism, professor	profess	professional>-ly
protection, protector	protect	protective>-ly, protected
punishment	punish	punishable, punishing, (un)punished
qualification	(dis)qualify	(un)qualified, disqualified
rain	rain	rainy
reaction, reactor	react, reactivate	reactive, reactionary
realisation, reality, realism, realist	realise	real>-ly, realistic>-ally
reason	reason	(un)reasonable>-ly
reduction	reduce	reduced, reducible
regularity, regulation, regulator	regulate, regularise	regular>-ly
relation, relationship, relative, relativity	relate	related, relative>-ly
(un)reliability	rely	(un)reliable>-ly
religion		religious>-ly
response, responsiveness, (ir)responsibility	respond	responsive>-ly, (ir)responsible>-ly
risk	risk	risky
safe, safety, saver, savings	save	safe>-ly
(dis)satisfaction	(dis)satisfy	(dis)satisfied, (dis)satisfying>-ly, (dis)satisfactory>-ly
science, scientist		scientific>-ally
security	secure	secure>-ly
sensational, sense, sensor, senselessness, sensibility, sensitivity	sense	sensible>-ly, senseless>-ly, sensitive>-ly, sensational>-ly
seriousness		serious>-ly
signature, sign, signal	sign, signal	signed
shortage, shortening	shorten	short>-ly
skill		skillful>-ly, skilled
solution	solve	solvable
starvation	starve	starving, starved
strength	strengthen	strong>-ly
success	succeed	(un)successful>-ly
suggestion	suggest	suggestive>-ly, suggestible
suit, suitability	suit	(un)suitable>-ly, suited
supplier, supply, supplies	supply	
surprise	surprise	surprising>-ly, surprised
surroundings	surround	surrounded, surrounding
taste, taster	taste	tasty, tasteful>-ly, tasteless>-ly
tendency	tend	
terror, terrorism, terrorist	terrify, terrorise	terrible>-ly, terrific>-ally, terrifying>-ly, terrified
theft, thief, thieving		thieving
thought	think	thinking, thoughtful>-ly, thoughtless>-ly
threat	threaten	threatened, threatening>-ly
tiredness	tire	tired, tiring>-ly, tireless>-ly, tiresome
tradition		traditional>-ly
trainer, trainee, training	train	trained, training
truth, truthfulness		true>-ly, truthful>-ly
(mis)understanding	(mis)understand	understandable, understanding
use, user, usefulness, uselessness	use	used, useful>-ly, useless>-ly
valuation, value, valuer, evaluation	value, evaluate	(in)valuable, valueless
variability, variant, variety, variation	vary	varied, various>-ly, variable>-ly
violence		violent>-ly

NOUN

warmth, warmer
warning
week, weekday, weekend
weight
wisdom

VERB

warm
warn
weigh

ADJECTIVE/ADVERB

warm>-ly
warning>-ly, warned
weekly
weighty, weightless
(un)wise>-ly

Irregular Verbs

INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
bear	bore	born(e)	light	lit	lit
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bend	bent	bent	meet	met	met
bind	bound	bound	pay	paid	paid
bite	bit	bitten	put	put	put
blow	blew	blown	read	read	read
break	broke	broken	ride	rode	ridden
bring	brought	brought	ring	rang	rung
build	built	built	rise	rose	risen
burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned	run	ran	run
buy	bought	bought	say	said	said
burst	burst	burst	see	saw	seen
catch	caught	caught	seek	sought	sought
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
creep	crept	crept	sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
cut	cut	cut	shake	shook	shaken
deal	dealt	dealt	shine	shone	shone
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
do	did	done	show	showed	shown
draw	drew	drawn	shut	shut	shut
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	sing	sang	sung
drink	drank	drunk	sink	sank	sunk
drive	drove	driven	sit	sat	sat
eat	ate	eaten	sleep	slept	slept
fall	fell	fallen	smell	smelt/smelled	smelt/smelled
feed	fed	fed	speak	spoke	spoken
feel	felt	felt	speed	sped	sped
fight	fought	fought	spell	spelt/spelled	spelt/spelled
find	found	found	spend	spent	spent
fly	flew	flown	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
forget	forgot	forgotten	split	split	split
forgive	forgave	forgiven	spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled
freeze	froze	frozen	spread	spread	spread
get	got	got	stand	stood	stood
give	gave	given	steal	stole	stolen
go	went	gone	stick	stuck	stuck
grow	grew	grown	sting	stung	stung
hang	hung	hung	strike	struck	struck
have	had	had	sweep	swept	swept
hear	heard	heard	swear	swore	sworn
hide	hid	hidden	swim	swam	swum
hit	hit	hit	take	took	taken
hold	held	held	teach	taught	taught
hurt	hurt	hurt	tear	tore	torn
keep	kept	kept	tell	told	told
kneel	knelt	knelt	think	thought	thought
knit	knit/knitted	knit/knitted	throw	threw	thrown
know	knew	known	understand	understood	understood
lay	laid	laid	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore	worn
lean	leant/leaned	leant/leaned	weave	wove	woven
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	weep	wept	wept
leave	left	left	win	won	won
lend	lent	lent	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
let	let	let	write	wrote	written

Contents

Revision Test 1	170
Revision Test 2	173
Revision Test 3	176
Revision Test 4	179
Revision Test 5	182
Revision Test 6	185
Final FCE Test	188
Final ECCE Test	192
Keys to Tests	197

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. It was Sue's birthday, so she _____ a friend to celebrate.
a. asked for b. asked out c. asked in d. asked with
2. After thinking about it, he finally _____ to accept the offer.
a. came along b. came into c. came across d. came round
3. I remember Sally _____ something about a party on Saturday.
a. reporting b. mentioning c. expressing d. praising
4. My boss _____ me because he thought I was worthy of the job.
a. rented b. let c. hired d. lent
5. Mary _____ with her boyfriend last week.
a. broke into b. broke down c. broke in d. broke up
6. I couldn't help but _____ the huge birthmark on her hand.
a. look b. notice c. see d. watch
7. Do you think you can take Thursday off from _____?
a. job b. work c. duty d. task
8. I can't do two things _____ .
a. at last b. at least c. at the same time d. at first
9. I was surprised _____ her reaction.
a. about b. by c. with d. of
10. How were your test _____, Brian?
a. results b. solutions c. effects d. consequences

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. My mother is a primary school _____ . **TEACH**
2. What is your _____ kind of music? **FAVOUR**
3. I am not good at making _____ . **DECIDE**
4. He is a _____ basketball player. **PROFESSION**
5. She wants to have a _____ wedding. **TRADITION**

C Choose the correct answers.

Last week, a thief (1) _____ my house. He (2) _____ all of my jewellery, along with my television set and my stereo. (3) _____, I thought I had left the door unlocked by mistake. But then, I (4) _____ at the window and realised the glass was broken. I called the police right away, but they weren't very helpful. They just told me to avoid keeping expensive things in the house. Now, I (5) _____ buying an alarm to keep this from happening again.

1. a. broke up
b. broke into
c. broke out
d. broke down

2. a. stole
b. will steal
c. steals
d. was stealing

3. a. At least
b. At first
c. At most
d. At present

4. a. noticed
b. mentioned
c. regarded
d. looked

5. a. had considered
b. consider
c. am considering
d. be considering

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- You _____ lie so much. Try to be more honest.
a. couldn't b. wouldn't c. shouldn't d. can't
- You're a good student John. You don't need _____ that hard.
a. study b. to study c. studying d. to have been studying
- I prefer _____ to playing football.
a. swimming b. to swim c. swim d. to be swimming
- Alice, _____ I borrow your car?
a. will b. would c. must d. could
- Don't you remember _____ Lucy last week?
a. meet b. to meet c. meeting d. to meeting
- _____ I get you another glass of water?
a. Shall b. Would c. Mustn't d. Can't
- Maria suggested _____ on a short camping holiday.
a. to go b. go c. going d. to going
- I _____ left my keys at home because they're not in my bag.
a. must have b. can have c. would have d. could have
- Where's Harry? I _____ find him anywhere.
a. wouldn't b. might not c. will not d. can't
- You have to be careful not _____ anything insulting.
a. to say b. to have said c. to be saying d. saying

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- I needed some milk, so I went to the supermarket.
get I went to the supermarket _____ some milk.
- Sue will make an effort to get there on time.
try Sue _____ there on time.
- Julie didn't lock the door when she left her house.
without Julie _____ the door.
- Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing-up.
will Karen, _____ with the washing-up?
- Simon, let's go to an amusement park.
how Simon, _____ to an amusement park?

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- Laura _____ well with everyone.
a. gets along b. gets away c. gets by d. gets over
- Why don't you try walking to work _____? It's not that far away after all!
a. for a walk b. for ages c. for a change d. for ages
- Don't forget to leave a _____ for the waiter.
a. donation b. tip c. allowance d. loan
- What _____ is used in Australia?
a. fine b. bill c. income d. currency
- He tries to _____ to the community by donating money to charity.
a. give away b. give back c. give in d. give out
- The _____ on the cruise ship was very helpful and friendly.
a. crew b. staff c. team d. group
- All the _____ at the dinner party were seated upon arrival.
a. hosts b. visitors c. guests d. employees
- You can never _____ Sarah to be on time. She's always late.
a. count on b. count in c. count out d. count up
- I called him by the wrong name _____.
a. by heart b. by force c. by chance d. by mistake
- They _____ two years ago and haven't spoken to each other since then.
a. fell in b. fell out c. fell behind d. fell off

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- The reports show that it was a _____ year for the company.
- She is tall, thin and extremely _____. Don't you think?
- She is so _____ that she cries every time she sees a romantic film.
- He didn't get the job because he didn't have the necessary _____.
- The two countries didn't manage to reach an _____.

SUCCESS

ATTRACT

SENSE

QUALIFY

AGREE

C Choose the correct answers.

My sister was sick for a whole month. She had no energy and had (1) _____ in bed all day. She (2) _____ go to school, so she (3) _____ in her classes. The doctor told her she (4) _____ eat well and drink a lot of fluids. Feeling ill is not very fun, so I spent my time (5) _____ to cheer her up as much as I could. I bought her little presents and kept her company. We watched a lot of DVDs together, listened to music, and read magazines. Overall, she had a positive attitude the entire time even though it took such a long time for her to (6) _____ her illness.

1. a. stay
b. to stay
c. to be staying
d. staying

2. a. couldn't
b. can't
c. wouldn't
d. mustn't

3. a. fell down
b. fell out
c. fell for
d. fell behind

4. a. should
b. might
c. may
d. would

5. a. to try
b. trying
c. try
d. to have tried

6. a. get by
b. get on with
c. get over
d. get away

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. We are looking for _____ different place to go on holiday this year.
a. the b. one c. a d. an
2. I didn't find _____ of the two books interesting.
a. either b. neither c. both d. a few
3. _____ student has their own locker.
a. Some b. Any c. Every d. No
4. She is _____ girl in the entire class.
a. smarter b. smarter than c. the smart d. the smartest
5. Even if I tried my hardest, I could never run as _____ as him.
a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. the fastest
6. _____ my brothers play sports.
a. Neither b. None c. Both of d. Some
7. Feel free to visit us _____ day next week.
a. no b. a few c. most d. any
8. I won't eat _____ spicy.
a. everything b. any c. anything d. nothing
9. _____ time I eat too much, my stomach starts to hurt.
a. Some b. Every c. Most d. Many
10. He behaved _____ at the party.
a. bad b. worst c. badly d. worse

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

1. Although she acts very well, she has never had a leading role.
good Despite being _____, she has never had a leading role.
2. In some countries, the ox is used for pulling vehicles or carrying things.
are In some countries, _____ for pulling vehicles or carrying things.
3. The Economist is published every week.
a The Economist _____ magazine.
4. Two hours later, David had swum six miles, but Julie had only swum three.
twice Two hours later, David had swum _____ Julie.
5. The book was less interesting than I thought it would be.
as The book _____ I thought it would be.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. _____ my bag for a minute, will you?
a. Hold on b. Hold on to c. Hold up d. Hold out
2. He _____ making fun of her even though she was crying.
a. kept off b. kept out c. kept on d. kept up
3. Short skirts are _____ this season.
a. in fashion b. in favour c. in detail d. in common
4. I could tell from a distance that those diamonds were _____.
a. false b. untrue c. fake d. imitation
5. She was so upset that she _____ the phone on him.
a. handed in b. hung about c. hung on d. hung up
6. My dad is _____ of the human resource department at his job.
a. in advance b. in case c. in charge d. in the beginning
7. Her table _____ are horrible! She's so messy!
a. habits b. behaviours c. manners d. manner
8. Try not to _____ the secret to anyone.
a. confess b. reveal c. admit d. display
9. I don't think that hat _____ your outfit.
a. goes ahead b. goes out c. goes on d. goes with
10. Eating healthily can _____ you from gaining weight.
a. avoid b. prevent c. keep up d. reduce

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. He gave a brilliant _____ . **PERFORM**
2. Nowadays, children are exposed to _____ from a very early age. **VIOLENT**
3. His _____ is becoming more and more hostile. **BEHAVE**
4. They say that " _____ killed the cat." **CURIOUS**
5. After a lot of _____ , he made the right decision. **THINK**

C Choose the correct answers.

History is a subject that has always interested me. Even as (1) _____ little girl, I loved going to museums and reading about ancient civilisations. In school, I was (2) _____ student in my History class. I always paid attention and got really good grades. After high school, I discussed it with my parents and decided to (3) _____ and study archaeology in college. Now, I work as (4) _____ archaeologist and I absolutely love my job. Every time I meet a young person with a dream, I always encourage them to pursue their passion. There is no (5) _____ feeling than doing what you love.

1. a. the
b. a
c. -
d. one
2. a. the best
b. better
c. best
d. good
3. a. go out
b. go on
c. go with
d. go ahead

4. a. a
b. an
c. one
d. the
5. a. greater
b. great
c. greatest
d. the greatest

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- They looked at _____ and laughed.
a. their b. another c. each other d. every other
- My handbag _____ yesterday morning.
a. is stolen b. stole c. was stolen d. was stealing
- Tricia's hair _____ by the hairdresser.
a. dyed b. was dyed c. had dyed d. were dyed
- My mum _____ my room yesterday.
a. had me clean b. had me cleaned c. had me cleaning d. is having me clean
- I remember _____ my picture taken by you.
a. to have b. having c. to be having d. had
- _____ cat is friendlier than yours.
a. We b. Ours c. Our d. Us
- Please help _____ to more food – there's plenty.
a. each other b. ourselves c. us d. yourselves
- You wouldn't be wet if you _____ an umbrella with you.
a. had taken b. took c. take d. will take
- If I _____ you, I wouldn't get upset over something so insignificant.
a. am b. had been c. were d. was being
- If you _____ New York, make sure to see the Empire State Building.
a. visited b. have visited c. had visited d. should visit

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- They say that he is a millionaire.
said He _____ a millionaire.
- If you want everyone to understand you, speak more clearly.
yourself If you want to _____, speak more clearly.
- I have to send the application form by Friday.
be The application form _____ by Friday.
- If you happen to see Dr Turner, give him my regards.
should If _____ Dr Turner, give him my regards.
- Someone broke Gary's front teeth while he was playing football.
had Gary _____ while he was playing football.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Even though he's missing a leg, he leads a(n) _____ life.
a. common b. usual c. normal d. boring
2. Can you please _____ the word 'destiny' in the dictionary?
a. look over b. look up c. look into d. look after
3. We _____ that you stay the night. We won't take 'no' for an answer.
a. persist b. resist c. push d. insist
4. He doesn't really like meat – _____, beef.
a. in pieces b. in particular c. in general d. in order
5. Despite his appearance, he's really not as _____ as he seems.
a. tough b. difficult c. hard d. demanding
6. He spoke so softly that it was difficult to _____ what he was saying.
a. make for b. make up c. make out d. make in
7. The _____ Egyptians built the Pyramids.
a. ancient b. antique c. elderly d. old
8. I owe John a lot of money and I still haven't _____.
a. paid him off b. paid him back c. pulled him over d. pulled him down
9. _____, the actor looks a lot shorter than he is on screen.
a. In secret b. In private c. In theory d. In reality
10. He is the only _____ ancestor of the King.
a. live b. living c. alive d. lively

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. I don't _____ go out on weekdays. **NORMAL**
2. He gave us a _____ version of the story. **DIFFER**
3. He stood there in the _____, with the lights off. **DARK**
4. These snakes are _____. **POISON**
5. There was an expression of _____ on his face. **BORE**

C Choose the correct answers.

Nowadays, more and more children (1) _____ in homes where two languages are spoken. Language experts have found that children can learn two languages at the same time and that they can't really tell the difference between (2) _____. (3) _____ they speak more than two languages, they can still easily switch from one language to the other. According to Dr Emma Redmond, children are not confused by using two languages once they have learnt when and with whom they should use each language. However, the most important thing is to let children learn in an environment free from pressure - a relaxing and supportive (4) _____. (5) _____ they love Power Rangers, then they should feel free to talk about their favourite heroes in either of the two languages.

1. a. are raised
b. raise
c. are raising
d. had been raised

4. a. another
b. whatever
c. ones
d. one

2. a. themselves
b. it
c. them
d. us

5. a. When
b. If
c. On condition
d. Providing

3. a. Unless
b. In case
c. Whether
d. Even if

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- _____ he has a car, he hardly ever drives it.
a. Although b. Despite c. No matter d. However
- _____ her brave effort, she never made it to the final round.
a. While b. Even though c. Despite d. Whatever
- She speaks to him as if she _____ him for years.
a. has known b. will know c. is known d. knew
- I wish you _____ walk so fast. I can't keep up with you.
a. wouldn't b. couldn't c. shouldn't d. mustn't
- Lisa would rather _____ in tonight. She doesn't feel like going out.
a. be staying b. stay c. had stayed d. have been staying
- My sister suggested _____ away for the weekend.
a. go b. going c. gone d. to be going
- The painting _____ is in the museum is really famous.
a. whom b. whose c. that d. who
- She fell down _____ she was getting off the bus.
a. until b. as c. after d. before
- He _____ that he would pick me up from work tomorrow.
a. says b. is saying c. has been saying d. said
- They've got a nice house, _____ ?
a. haven't they b. they haven't c. won't they d. have they

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- "Drop your gun at once!" the police officer shouted at the robber.
ordered The police officer _____ his gun at once.
- "If only I could explain everything," she sighed.
wished She _____ everything.
- Is the castle open to visitors?
know Do you _____ open to visitors?
- I finished reading the book and then I went to bed.
until I didn't go to bed _____ the book.
- That man stole the woman's purse and he is now leaving the shop.
that The _____ the shop stole the woman's purse.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

1. Alice recently _____ a lot of weight.
a. put aside b. put on c. put up d. put out
2. She always gets _____ when speaking in front of a large group of people.
a. nervous b. mad c. wild d. irritable
3. She was _____ of her horrible behaviour.
a. timid b. embarrassed c. shy d. ashamed
4. Why don't you _____ those new trousers I bought you?
a. try in b. try out c. try on d. try up
5. He ran and hid behind a tree in order to be _____.
a. out of reach b. out of danger c. out of control d. out of breath
6. You must first _____ the water before adding the rice.
a. fry b. bake c. roast d. boil
7. I have an important job _____ on Monday.
a. interview b. debate c. discussion d. dialogue
8. He _____ a small bird with the car.
a. ran away b. ran into c. ran out of d. ran over
9. Can you please _____ the clothes that are on the bed?
a. wrap b. fold c. tie d. fasten
10. I _____ John as one of my closest friends.
a. think b. consider c. suppose d. regard

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

1. _____ is the primary concern of our automobile company. **SAFE**
2. He leads a very _____ lifestyle. **HEALTH**
3. Put your _____ at the bottom of the page. **SIGN**
4. Do you have _____ heating in your flat? **CENTRE**
5. Japanese cars are said to be very _____. **RELY**

C Choose the correct answers.

Suppose you lived in a small town, (1) _____ you miss the city? Many people would rather live in the peaceful suburbs than deal with the crowded, noisy streets of the city. At least that's what I thought. I had lived in New York City for 3 years, and after a while, I couldn't (2) _____ the noise and pollution. It was causing me to be a very (3) _____ person. So, I considered the option of moving to the suburbs. Now, after five years of living away from the city, I kind of miss it. I've got a new neighbour (4) _____ just moved from the city. She says that she misses the city too sometimes. So now, we arrange to go into the city every now and then. I guess you can't have your cake and eat it too, (5) _____ ?

1. a. could
b. should
c. would
d. do

2. a. put aside
b. put on
c. put up
d. put up with

3. a. mad
b. wild
c. irritable
d. furious

4. a. who
b. which
c. of which
d. whose

5. a. do you
b. can you
c. shall you
d. can't you

Grammar Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- People _____ her always manage to get what they want.
a. such b. like c. as d. except for
- _____ his behaviour, it is no wonder he was fired.
a. Considering b. According to c. As a result d. Particularly
- “I don’t like coffee”.
“I _____, but I like tea.”
a. don’t either b. neither don’t c. do too d. do so
- Lisa had a headache, _____ she decided to stay in bed.
a. not only b. but c. so d. besides
- _____ the film critic, the film is not worth watching.
a. Regarding b. Concerning c. In contrast to d. According to
- _____ home, she realised she had left her house keys at work.
a. To drive b. Driving c. She drives d. She drove
- _____ behind at work, he decided to stay late.
a. To have fallen b. Having fell c. Having to fall d. Having fallen
- No sooner had I opened the door _____ the telephone began ringing.
a. when b. until c. than d. but
- The audience was utterly _____ by the play.
a. boring b. bore c. bored d. a bore
- She is _____ rude and mean. I can’t understand why you’re friends with her.
a. neither b. either c. both d. not only

B Using the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2-5 words in total.)

- It is such a nice day today!
so It _____ today!
- He never told me lies.
once Not _____ me lies.
- Jason was the only person who didn’t agree with the proposal.
except Everyone _____ with the proposal.
- Sonia didn’t enjoy herself at the theatre, as the play made her feel rather depressed.
was Sonia thought _____ and didn’t enjoy herself at the theatre.
- One of the things we still don’t know is the time of the accident.
occured What _____ one of the things we still don’t know.

Vocabulary Practice

A Choose the correct answers.

- He can't cope _____ all the workload.
a. about b. with c. in d. for
- Don't forget to _____ a table for four for Friday evening.
a. book b. hire c. reserve d. call
- He was arrested _____ murder.
a. of b. by c. with d. for
- Try not to _____ more than one project at work. You'll get overwhelmed.
a. take after b. take on c. take up d. take off
- She _____ her soda because she was thirsty.
a. chewed b. swallowed c. gulped d. bit
- Don't forget to _____ the lights before you leave the house.
a. turn up b. turn on c. turn off d. turn down
- The little girl was _____ on her way back from school and hasn't been seen since.
a. robbed b. kidnapped c. stolen d. taken
- How often do you _____ at the gym?
a. work out b. wear out c. wash up d. watch out
- Even though everyone was panicking, he tried to keep the situation _____.
a. under pressure b. under arrest c. under the impression d. under control
- I prefer to sit under the umbrella in the _____.
a. sunrise b. shadow c. shade d. sunlight

B Complete using the correct form of the words in bold type.

- The best _____ against weight gain is exercise. **PREVENT**
- His death was a great _____ for everyone. **LOSE**
- In the _____, she didn't like him. **BEGIN**
- Sometimes you have to pay _____ to the details. **ATTEND**
- Documentaries can be very _____. **INFORM**

C Choose the correct answers.

Does your busy lifestyle leave you feeling (1) _____? A balanced diet can help you feel more energetic for longer. (2) _____ what you may think, eating a wide variety of low-fat, high energy foods like fruit, vegetables and lean protein can help immensely. (3) _____ eating right, it's important to do things for yourself. (4) _____, after a tiring day at work, give yourself a treat. Take a bubble bath, read, or listen to (5) _____ music. Also, don't forget to get six to eight hours of sleep each night. And, most importantly, try to take it easy!

1. a. exhausted
b. exhausting
c. being exhausted
d. exhaustion

2. a. Although
b. Despite
c. Whatever
d. Whereas

3. a. Also
b. In addition to
c. Especially
d. In fact

4. a. However
b. Not only
c. Particularly
d. For instance

5. a. relaxation
b. relax
c. relaxed
d. relaxing

Final FCE Test

PART 1

For questions 1-12, read the text below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. Mark your answers on the separate answer sheet.

A MEMORY

My first day at school is a memory which will always stand _____ (1) in my mind. I entered the gate and stared at the tall grey building. I put _____ (2) my anxiety and kept walking. Students were talking to friends _____ (3) they hadn't seen all summer. They briefly glanced my way, not paying _____ (4) attention. I felt out of place, wishing I could be somewhere more familiar. Then the bell rang. It was time for me to go to class.

I walked down the corridor, trying to balance the _____ (5) of books I was holding and trying to lose myself in the _____ (6). I reached the classroom and took a deep breath. My mouth was dry. My heart pounding. I entered the room and all twenty-four pairs of eyes fell upon me, taking in every detail of my _____ (7). I had never felt so uncomfortable in all my life. Someone called out, "Why do we always get the new teachers? They never know what they're doing!" he _____ (8).

The comment made me feel even worse. I tried to remember all the things I had learnt during my training, _____ (9) nothing came to mind. In practice, everything seemed different. I quickly had to think of something to _____ (10). In the end, I did. I don't really recall what, but somehow I _____ (11) to get through the lesson.

I surely didn't _____ (12) my reactions that first day at school. But looking back now, I can laugh about the whole thing. I suppose everyone goes through something like this on their first day at work.

ANSWER SHEET

- | | | | | |
|----|---------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1 | A by | B out | C up for | D on |
| 2 | A aside | B away | C off | D out |
| 3 | A whose | B why | C which | D whom |
| 4 | A plenty | B very | C too | D much |
| 5 | A heap | B bundle | C pile | D bunch |
| 6 | A viewers | B audience | C spectators | D crowd |
| 7 | A image | B picture | C appearance | D view |
| 8 | A disapproved | B blamed | C accused | D criticised |
| 9 | A however | B instead | C despite | D otherwise |
| 10 | A remark | B speak | C say | D tell |
| 11 | A capable | B managed | C able | D succeeded |
| 12 | A wait | B see | C look forward | D anticipate |

1	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
2	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
3	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
4	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
5	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
6	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
7	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
8	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
9	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
10	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
11	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D
12	<input type="checkbox"/> A	<input type="checkbox"/> B	<input type="checkbox"/> C	<input type="checkbox"/> D

PART 2

For questions 13-24, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

FISH AND CHIPS

Fried fish and chips, which happens _____ (13) be a national food for the Britons, has been around _____ (14) over 100 years. No one knows exactly _____ (15) fish and chips came about; it's still a mystery. _____ (16), it is known that fried fish was _____ (17) sale in the streets of London in the 1830s. Chips _____ (18) thought to have been introduced in the 1870s.

When fish and chip shops started, they spread quickly and soon _____ (19) an important part of working-class life. _____ (20) popular were they that you were sure to find a fish and chip shop on every second or third street corner in industrial towns. It was convenient, hot food and more importantly, cheap. The fish and chips was always wrapped in newspaper in order to be kept warm on the _____ (21) home. Today, fish and chips is still part of the British culture and some families still have it for lunch or dinner. It's also a tourist attraction. Restaurant chains have been opened, _____ (22). They even wrap up the fish and chips in imitation newspaper. However, this custom is under threat. More and more traditional fish and chip shops end _____ (23) closing down _____ (24) year. Will this British custom slowly disappear?

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT
WRITE HERE

13		13	
14		14	
15		15	
16		16	
17		17	
18		18	
19		19	
20		20	
21		21	
22		22	
23		23	
24		24	

PART 3

For questions 25-34, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. Write your answers in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

FLYING FISH

It may seem _____ (25) but some fish actually do fly. They are fish of the Exocoetidae family and are _____ (26) found in tropical waters. They have the _____ (27) to travel up to 400 metres in the air, using their fins. Their _____ (28) in and out of the water are very elegant. Why do they fly? Well, for their own _____ (29). It's a matter of _____ (30) if they want to avoid predators like dolphins, in the water. _____ (31) though, the safety the air offers is questionable, as _____ (32) fish-eating birds may be flying overhead. And if the flying fish get really _____ (33), there is always the _____ (34) that a predator may be waiting at the landing point.

- BELIEVE
- FREQUENT
- ABLE
- MOVE
- PROTECT
- NECESSARY
- SURPRISE
- THREAT
- LUCK
- POSSIBLE

ANSWER SHEET

DO NOT WRITE HERE

25		25
26		26
27		27
28		28
29		29
30		30
31		31
32		32
33		33
34		34

PART 4

For questions 35-42, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. Write the missing words in capital letters on the separate answer sheet.

35. I would really like to have a good relationship with my parents, but I don't.

got

I wish _____ my parents.

ANSWER SHEET

35	_____	35	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

36. The puzzle was too difficult for anyone to solve.

so

The puzzle was _____ could solve it.

36	_____	36	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

37. I'd buy a car but I'm unemployed.

out

If I _____, I'd buy a car.

37	_____	37	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

38. Today at work, Debbie was constantly talking about her trip to Hungary.

nothing

Today at work, Debbie _____ her trip to Hungary.

38	_____	38	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

39. I prefer to eat spicy food.

preference

I _____ spicy food.

39	_____	39	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

40. The workers demolished the old building on Parker Street yesterday.

pulled

The old building on Parker Street _____ by the workers yesterday.

40	_____	40	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

41. Ted finds it difficult to study more than four hours a day.

used

Ted _____ more than four hours a day.

41	_____	41	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

42. "Don't take the car because I need it," my brother said.

told

My brother _____ the car because he needed it.

42	_____	42	0	1	2
			<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Final ECCE Test

Grammar

1. Let me introduce you _____ my husband Alex.
 - a. at
 - b. by
 - c. to
 - d. with
2. You should take an umbrella if it _____ outside.
 - a. is raining
 - b. rained
 - c. would rain
 - d. will rain
3. My sister Jane is afraid _____ dogs.
 - a. about
 - b. of
 - c. from
 - d. with
4. He really wanted _____ abroad during his senior year.
 - a. study
 - b. studied
 - c. studying
 - d. to study
5. "I just lost my job!"
"I'm so sorry _____."
 - a. to hear that
 - b. that I heard
 - c. for what I heard
 - d. to have that heard
6. In the end, Sarah had _____ our help.
 - a. nothing to need of
 - b. all need of
 - c. little need of
 - d. to need
7. It's always difficult deciding _____ to cook for dinner.
 - a. that's
 - b. what
 - c. not
 - d. why
8. By the time you get my letter, I _____ town.
 - a. will leave
 - b. am leaving
 - c. had left
 - d. will have left
9. Your test results should arrive _____ day now.
 - a. each
 - b. on a
 - c. any
 - d. one
10. That's the couple for _____ I sometimes babysit.
 - a. who
 - b. whom
 - c. them
 - d. what
11. Take a flashlight, _____ you will not be able to see anything in the dark.
 - a. unless
 - b. otherwise
 - c. however
 - d. despite
12. "Do you want to come with us to the beach this weekend?"
"I wish _____, but I have too much studying to do."
 - a. I could
 - b. I did
 - c. I would
 - d. I had
13. _____ there before, I didn't want to go again.
 - a. To have been
 - b. Because of being
 - c. Having been
 - d. To having been

14. You can borrow my car as long as you _____
drink and drive.
a. do not
b. will not
c. can not
d. must not
15. _____ my alarm clock didn't ring, I woke up
on time.
a. Despite
b. Despite of
c. However
d. Even though
16. She must be the most beautiful woman I _____.
a. ever have seen
b. have never seen
c. have ever seen
d. will ever see
17. "I'm really sleepy."
"So _____ I. Let's go to bed."
a. do
b. was
c. did
d. am
18. I hardly _____ eat junk food.
a. ever
b. never
c. rarely
d. rather
19. I bought a dress the same color _____ yours.
a. of
b. to
c. as
d. with
20. "Where's Lucy?"
"She's out _____."
a. shopping
b. to shopping
c. go shopping
d. for shopping
21. We don't _____ get visitors this time of year.
a. often
b. never
c. sometimes
d. rarely
22. I can't run _____ you.
a. as fast as
b. so fast
c. so faster that
d. the faster of
23. He lives in an apartment _____ is by the sea.
a. it
b. that
c. what
d. where
24. _____ you say, I still won't believe you.
a. Forever
b. However
c. Whatever
d. Wherever
25. Banks _____ on public holidays.
a. are closed
b. are closing
c. will be closing
d. to be closed
26. Don't hesitate to call me _____ of an emergency.
a. provided
b. as long
c. though
d. in case
27. I have very _____ respect for people who litter.
a. a little
b. little
c. few
d. a few
28. _____ point in arguing. It'll only make the
situation worse.
a. It's no
b. It isn't
c. There's no
d. There isn't

29. I can't believe you've never heard _____ Britney Spears!
a. about
b. off
c. from
d. of
30. Since they broke up, they've stopped _____ each other.
a. to call
b. having called
c. having to call
d. calling
31. My brother is _____ than me.
a. much elder
b. much older
c. more older
d. more old
32. You'll never believe who I ran _____ at the supermarket!
a. out
b. up
c. down
d. into
33. Hardly _____ when she told him to be quiet.
a. he spoke
b. he had spoken
c. had he spoken
d. has he spoken
34. "_____ suitcase is this?"
"It's Lena's."
a. What
b. Which
c. Whom
d. Whose
35. _____ to being loud, he's also very rude.
a. In addition
b. In spite
c. Even though
d. Regardless

| Vocabulary

36. I made a(n) _____ with the doctor for Wednesday afternoon.
a. event
b. meeting
c. date
d. appointment
37. The boss asked Allan to work overtime and he _____ accepted.
a. anxiously
b. ambitiously
c. carefully
d. willingly
38. The crime he committed will cause him to spend the rest of his life behind _____.
a. jail
b. poles
c. iron
d. bars
39. My friend Sally is _____ to chocolate. She eats way too much of it!
a. obsessed
b. devoted
c. addicted
d. absorbed
40. I'll be out all afternoon running _____.
a. tasks
b. errands
c. affairs
d. events
41. He went down in history as a _____ tyrant, hated by all.
a. merciful
b. ruthless
c. forgetful
d. forgiving

42. Isn't there room for the suitcases in the _____?
 a. hood
 b. trunk
 c. bumper
 d. dashboard
43. Mike, can I _____ your car? Mine has broken down.
 a. borrow
 b. own
 c. rent
 d. get
44. The woman refused to _____ the man's offer to drive her home.
 a. deny
 b. comply
 c. accept
 d. agree
45. The five star hotel on the beach is _____ recommended.
 a. largely
 b. highly
 c. very
 d. a lot
46. That skirt is way too _____ on me!
 a. tense
 b. tight
 c. hard
 d. tough
47. The slower you eat, the better you _____.
 a. munch
 b. swallow
 c. snack
 d. digest
48. Laura took _____ on the homeless man and gave him some change.
 a. shame
 b. sorrow
 c. pity
 d. grief
49. John _____ his mother he would never lie to her again.
 a. determined
 b. reminded
 c. assured
 d. certified
50. That scene in the movie was so funny that the whole theatre _____ into laughter.
 a. burst
 b. cried
 c. went
 d. dropped
51. Even if he worked all night, there was still no way he could meet the _____.
 a. finish line
 b. timing
 c. end
 d. deadline
52. The _____ of his house has risen greatly.
 a. value
 b. worth
 c. expense
 d. merit
53. I really can't _____ the way he laughs.
 a. enjoy
 b. listen
 c. stand
 d. approve
54. Don't worry, we'll figure something out; after all, where there is a _____ there is a way.
 a. hope
 b. wish
 c. will
 d. desire
55. It took her years to _____ her sister's death.
 a. go through
 b. put on
 c. give away
 d. get over
56. Did Elise _____ decide to quit her job?
 a. definitely
 b. highly
 c. probably
 d. possibly
57. Can you please tell me if the price of the meal _____ tax?
 a. embodies
 b. holds
 c. consists
 d. includes

58. My math test results were a real _____.
- fight
 - disaster
 - tragedy
 - battle
59. As I was walking down the street, I _____ an old friend of mine.
- came up
 - found out
 - ran into
 - gave up
60. The dress fits you perfectly, but I don't think the color _____ you.
- matches
 - suits
 - goes
 - looks
61. My teacher won't be back from her _____ until next Tuesday.
- trip
 - excursion
 - excavation
 - travel
62. The man gave me a detailed _____ of what happened on his trip.
- story
 - interpretation
 - account
 - explanation
63. There was a (n) _____ on the elevator door saying that it was out of order.
- warning
 - caution
 - emergency
 - notice
64. Despite its appearance, the plane was _____ new.
- simply
 - fairly
 - deeply
 - highly
65. An increasing number of credit card holders _____.
- overpay
 - overspend
 - overprice
 - overcharge
66. I _____ goodbye as I dropped her off.
- showed
 - turned
 - pointed
 - waved
67. He sat quietly the whole time and didn't _____ a single word.
- yell
 - shout
 - utter
 - murmer
68. Is there a reason you feel so _____?
- red
 - blue
 - green
 - white
69. Don't press that button! It will _____ the alarm.
- ring
 - load
 - energize
 - activate
70. After the play, the _____ stood up and applauded.
- observers
 - viewers
 - audience
 - listeners

Key to Revision Tests

REVISION TEST 1

Grammar Practice

- A.
1. a
 2. b
 3. c
 4. d
 5. a
 6. c
 7. a
 8. b
 9. b
 10. c

B.

1. does not go to
2. am thinking of visiting
3. had finished studying by
4. something exploded
5. think it will rain

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. d
3. b
4. c
5. d
6. b
7. b
8. c
9. b
10. a

B.

1. teacher
2. favourite
3. decisions
4. professional
5. traditional

C.

1. b
2. a
3. b
4. d
5. c

REVISION TEST 2

Grammar Practice

- A.
1. c
 2. b
 3. a
 4. d
 5. c
 6. a
 7. c
 8. a
 9. d
 10. a

B.

1. to get
2. will try to be
3. left the house without locking
4. will you help me
5. how about going

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. a
2. c
3. b
4. d
5. b
6. a
7. c
8. a
9. d
10. b

B.

1. successful
2. attractive
3. sensitive
4. qualifications
5. agreement

C.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. a
5. b
6. c

REVISION TEST 3

Grammar Practice

- A.
1. c
 2. a
 3. c
 4. d
 5. a
 6. c
 7. d
 8. c
 9. b
 10. c

B.

1. a good actress
2. oxen are used
3. is a weekly
4. twice as far as
5. wasn't so/as interesting as

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. c
5. d
6. c
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. b

B.

1. performance
2. violence
3. behaviour
4. curiosity
5. thought

C.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. a

REVISION TEST 4**Grammar Practice**

A.

1. c
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. d
8. a
9. c
10. d

B.

1. is said to be
2. make yourself understood
3. must be sent
4. you should see
5. had his front teeth broken

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b
5. a
6. c
7. a
8. b
9. d
10. b

B.

1. normally
2. different
3. darkness
4. poisonous
5. boredom

C.

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. d
5. b

REVISION TEST 5**Grammar Practice**

A.

1. a
2. c
3. d
4. a
5. b
6. b
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. a

B.

1. ordered the robber to drop
2. wished she could explain
3. know if the castle is
4. until I (had) finished reading
5. man that is now leaving

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. c
5. b
6. d
7. a
8. d
9. b
10. d

B.

1. Safety
2. healthy
3. signature
4. central
5. reliable

C.

1. c
2. d
3. c
4. a
5. b

REVISION TEST 6**Grammar Practice**

A.

1. b
2. a
3. a
4. c
5. d
6. b
7. d
8. c
9. c
10. c

B.

1. is so nice (a day)
2. once did he tell
3. except (for) Jason agreed
4. the play was depressing
5. time the accident occurred is

Vocabulary Practice

A.

1. b
2. c
3. d
4. b
5. c
6. c
7. b
8. a
9. d
10. c

B.

1. prevention
2. loss
3. beginning
4. attention
5. informative

C.

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. d
5. d

Key to Final FCE/ECCE Tests

FCE TEST

Part 1

1. B-out
2. A-aside
3. D-whom
4. D-much
5. C-pile
6. D-crowd
7. C-appearance
8. D-criticised
9. A-however
10. C-say
11. B-managed
12. D-anticipate

Part 2

13. to
14. for
15. how
16. However
17. on
18. are
19. became
20. So
21. way
22. too
23. up
24. each/every

Part 3

25. unbelievable
26. frequently
27. ability
28. movements
29. protection
30. necessity
31. Surprisingly
32. threatening
33. unlucky
34. possibility

Part 4

35. I got on well with
36. so difficult that no one
37. wasn't/weren't out of work
38. did nothing but/except talk about
39. have a preference for

40. was pulled down
41. is not used to studying
42. told me not to take

ECCE TEST

GRAMMAR

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. d
5. a
6. c
7. b
8. d
9. c
10. b
11. b
12. a
13. c
14. a
15. d
16. c
17. d
18. a
19. c
20. a
21. a
22. a
23. b
24. c
25. a
26. d
27. b
28. c
29. d
30. d
31. b
32. d
33. c
34. d
35. a

VOCABULARY

36. d
37. d
38. d
39. c

**SAMPLE COPY
NOT FOR SALE**

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice

Upper-Intermediate - B2

Teacher's Book

Grammar & Vocabulary Practice systematically teaches grammar and vocabulary and helps students develop all skills necessary to succeed in the Revised Cambridge FCE Examination, the Michigan ECCE and other exams.

The Student's Book includes:

- a variety of grammar and vocabulary exercises
- revision units and practice tests
- a glossary
- appendices with prepositions, prepositional phrases and derivatives

The Teacher's Book includes:

- The Student's Book with the Key overprinted
- Photocopiable tests

ISBN 10: 960-443-261-3

ISBN 13: 978-960-443-261-5



9 789604 432615


mm publications